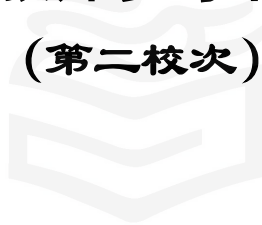


**新时代高职英语综合教程 1**  
**教师参考书**  
**(第二校次)**



高等教育出版社

# Unit One

## The Cradle of a Success

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	globalization, competitive, immigrate, employment, consequently promotion, cultivation, incline, harmonious, intellectually			
	get enrolled in, distinguish from, be more likely to do, contribute to, turn one's life around			
	Nouns and Verbs			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	Campus life	Prefixes	An envelop	Selecting sense of a word (1)
<b>Workshops</b>	1. Talking about how to borrow books from library		2. Talking about how to select books in library	

#### Section One

#### Passage A

#### I. Background information



1. Shenzhen Polytechnic is a higher TVET institution invested by the Shenzhen municipal government for full-time education, mainly focusing on the cultivation of applied professional techniques with high standards and qualifications on the front line of production, construction, management and services as well. Founded in 1993, the Polytechnic, today, has four campuses (the East, the West, the North, and the Overseas Chinese Town Campuses) which together, occupy a total area of 168 hectares, 49 hectares of which are buildings. These buildings house libraries with over 1.78 million books, laboratory complexes, and many other state-of-the-art facilities. Shenzhen Polytechnic's Industrial Training Center, for example, includes 28 training laboratories and 116 branch laboratories. In addition, the Polytechnic operates 330 off-campus practice bases.

深圳职业技术学院创建于 1993 年，是一所由深圳市政府投资兴建的全日制高等职业技术学院，主要为生产、建设、管理与服务一线培养高素质技术技能人才。学校现有东、西、北和华侨城四个校区，总面积 168 公顷，校舍建筑面积 49 公顷。学校图书馆藏书 178 万册，并配有实验中心和先进的海外艺术设备。如深圳职业技术学院行业培训中心，拥有 28 个实训室和 116 个分实训室。此外，学校还建立了 330 个校外实践基地。

2. Community colleges in America—sometimes called junior colleges, technical colleges or city colleges—are mostly two-year public institutions of higher education, awarding certificates, diplomas and associate's degrees. Some community colleges offer technical credentials; many community colleges carry comprehensive transfer and career-oriented programs. Many community colleges offer adult and continuing education.

美国社区学院主要是两年制的高等教育机构，有时被称作初级学院、技术学院或城市学院，可颁发各类培训资格证书、文凭以及副学士学位。一些社区学院可颁发技术资格证书；很多社区学院提供可转入综合大学和以职业为导向的课程，许多社区学院还提供成人教育和继续教育。



3. Walla Walla Community College (Walla Walla), founded in 1967, is a multi-campus college, with its main campus located in the state of Washington Walla Walla. With a current annual enrollment of over 13,000 students, Walla Walla Community college is a center of learning in Garfield and Asotin counties. Walla Walla Community college aims at

providing quality education. Teaching staff are excellent, dedicated and responsible. The college offers courses in Academic Transfer Education, Professional/Technical Education, Transitional Studies and Extended Learning. WWCC's e-learning program enables students to get an Associate's degree entirely online or through a combination of online and on-campus courses. Scholarships and grants will also be offered to outstanding students.

沃拉沃拉社区学院(沃拉沃拉)是一所多校区学院,建于 1967 年,主校园位于华盛顿州的沃拉沃拉市。现学院平均每年招收 13000 名学生,它已经成为加菲尔德和阿索廷县学习中心。学校致力于提供优质教育,其师资水平优秀、敬业负责。沃拉沃拉社区学院提供可转入四年制大学或综合大学续本的专科学位、职业技术专业学位以及个人进修的课程。学院提供网络教育,学生还可以通过完成在线学习和在校学习的课程结合获得副学士学位。学院还为优秀学生提供奖学金和助学金。

## II. Outline

Para. 1	The introductory remarks.
Para. 2	The assistance of college education in one's growth and development.
Para. 3	The close connection between college diploma and one's future career.
Para. 4	The relationship between higher education and the promotion of voluntary work and the cultivation of ideal citizens.
Para. 5	With joint efforts of both government and local organizations, tuition fee is no more a problem for getting higher education.

## III. Detailed study of Passage A

1. The first sentence of Paragraph 1 "With some of you harboring the desire to start earning straightaway after high school so that you can live an independent, unrestricted life, the conflict of whether you should go to college is bound to occur" can be paraphrased as follows:

Because some of high school graduates hold the idea that they can earn money right after high school and support themselves so as to live without the supervision of parents and schools, they will definitely face the crossroads—whether to go to college or take a job.

**2. get enrolled in** to arrange for oneself officially to join a course, school, etc. 登记, 注册, 被...录取

**e.g.**

With better grades, high school students will be in a greater position to get enrolled in a university after graduation.

成绩较好的高中生毕业后被大学录取的机会就更大。

Tom hoped to get enrolled in the field trip at the end of the term.

汤姆希望在期末能报名参加实习。

**3. globalization** n. the fact that different cultures and economic systems around the world

are becoming connected and similar to each other because of the influence of multinational companies and of improved communication 全球化，全世界化（世界各地的文化和经济体系日益关联）

**e.g.**

With globalization taking place, the job market has become even more competitive.

随着经济全球化的到来，就业市场的竞争越来越激烈。

Educational globalization is an irresistible trend of development of the present world.

教育全球化是当今世界不可抗拒的发展潮流。

**globe n.** 地球仪

**global a.** 全球的；全世界的

**globalize v.** 使全球化；全世界化

**4.competitive a.** used to describe a situation in which people or organizations try to be more successful or better than sb else who is trying to do the same as you 竞争的

**Synonym** rival

**e.g.**

With globalization taking place, the job market has become even more competitive.

随着经济全球化的到来，就业市场的竞争越来越激烈。

Graduates have to fight for jobs in a highly competitive market.

毕业生不得不在竞争激烈的市场上奋力争取找到工作。

**compete v.** 竞争；对抗

**competition n.** 竞争；角逐

**competence n.** 能力；胜任

**competitor n.** 竞争者；对手

**5.immigrate v.** to come and live permanently in a country after leaving one's own country (从外地) 移居；移民

**Synonym** populate

**e.g.**

You have to compete for a job with the people who immigrate from other countries.

就业时你所面临的竞争对手还有来自其它国家的移民。

Many international students choose to immigrate to China after they have completed their higher education.

许多国际学生大学毕业后选择移民中国。

**immigrant n.** 移民；外侨

**immigration n.** 移居（入境）；移民人数

**6.distinguish A (from B): v.** to be a characteristic that makes two people, animals or things different 使有别于；是具有...特色；成为...的特征

**Synonyms** tell ...from...; make a distinction between A and B; discriminate A from B

**e.g.**

So what is it that will distinguish you from all your competitors?

那么，与竞争对手相比你有什么优势呢？

It is her great versatility that distinguishes her from her classmates.

她多才多艺，在班上特别突出。

**distinguished a.** 杰出的；著名的

**7. employment n.** the condition of having paid work 雇用，受雇，就业

**Synonyms** work, job

**e.g.**

It is a well-known fact that you who have a higher degree tend to get employment.

众所周知，你学历越高就更加容易就业。

The number of full-time employment is falling in this company.

这个公司全职雇员在减少。

**employ v.** 雇用

**employer n.** 雇主

**employee n.** 雇员

**8. be likely to do** be probable or expected to do sth 可能做...

**e.g.**

With college diploma, you are more likely to get jobs.

持有大学学历，你更加可能获得就业机会。

The professor is hardly likely to refuse our request for the experiment.

教授不太可能拒绝我们要做这个实验的请求。

**likelihood n.** 可能；可能性

**9. consequently ad.** as a result; therefore 因此；所以

**Synonyms** hence, therefore, as a result

**e.g.**

Consequently, a college degree is the key to a better life.

因此，大学文凭是通向美好生活的绿卡。

The student used a lot of plagiarized data in his thesis, and was denied the academic degree consequently.

这位学生因在论文中抄袭大量别人数据而被取消了学位。

**consequence n.** 结果；后果

**consequent a.** 随后发生的；作为结果的

**consequential a.** 作为结果的；将产生重大结果的

**10. promotion n.** encouragement or aid to the progress of (a cause) (对某事业的) 促进，提倡，

**Synonyms** betterment, improvement

**e.g.**

Higher education will also benefit the promotion of voluntary work.

高等教育也将促进志愿者工作的开展。

Jane devoted herself to the promotion of elementary education.

简致力于发展基础教育。

**promote v.** 促进；推动

**promoter n.** 发起者；支持者

**11. cultivation n.** the deliberate development of particular relationship, quality or skill. 培养

**Synonyms** nurture, culture, training

**e.g.**

Higher education will also benefit the cultivation of ideal citizens.

高等教育也将促进模范公民的培养。

Higher vocational education should attach great importance to the cultivation of compound talents. 高等职业教育应当注重复合型人才的培养。

**cultivate** v. 培养; 逐渐形成

**cultivator** n. 种植者; 栽培者

**cultivated** a. 有教养的; 栽培的

**12. incline** v. 倾向于, 有...的趋势

**e.g.**

He inclines to reading in the library.

他爱在图书馆看书。

He inclines to my opinion on that matter.

关于那件事, 他更倾向于我的观点。

**be inclined to do sth.** 愿意做

**e.g.**

We are inclined to do social and volunteering work.

我们更加愿意从事社会活动和志愿者工作。

College students are inclined to do more social practice.

大学生想参与更多的社会实践活动。

**inclination** n. 倾向; 意愿

**13.** The sixth sentence of Paragraph 4 "You with better educational background are more tolerant of others, which contributes to the maintenance of a peaceful society." can be paraphrased as follows:

If you have better education, you can be more forgiving and merciful to other people. This will help keep our society more harmonious.

**14.contribute to** to increase, improve or add to sth 促成; 帮助

**Synonyms** to be beneficial to, to promote; to conduce to

**e.g.**

With better educational background, you are more tolerant of others, which contributes to the maintenance of a peaceful society.

拥有较好教育背景的人能更加宽容地对待他人, 这将有利社会和谐。

This book contributes a lot to the students' understanding of the subject.

此书对于学生了解该学科益处甚多。

**contribution** n. 贡献; 促成作用

**contributor** n. 捐款者; 做出贡献者

**15.harmonious** a. (of relationships, etc.) friendly, peaceful and without any disagreement 友好和睦的; 和谐的

**Synonyms** congenial, compatible, blending

**e.g.**

A harmonious society will help in strengthening the country as a whole.

一个和谐的社会将从整体上强化国力。

Good communication skills will promote the harmonious relationship among students.

良好的沟通能力有助于学生间和睦相处。

**harmony** n. 融洽; 和谐

**harmonize** v. 使和谐, 使一致



**16.** The first sentence of Paragraph 5 “The benefits of higher education can be judged from the way it benefits a person financially, emotionally, socially as well as intellectually.” can be paraphrased as follows:

With higher education degree, you will be better paid, more respectable and obtain higher EQ and IQ. 或 (We can evaluate the merits of higher education from the increasing salary, happier mood, more harmonious neighborhood and smarter mind it can bring to a person.)

**17. intellectually ad.** the way connected with or using a person’s ability to think in a logical way and understand things 智力上

**e.g.**

The benefits of higher education can be judged from the way it benefits a person financially, emotionally, socially as well as intellectually.

高等教育的益处还可以从它对个体的经济、情感、社交以及智力等方面的帮助来评价。

Hanley was a bright man, intellectually superior to his classmates.

汉利很聪明，其才干超过他同学。

**intellect n.** 智力；知识分子

**intellectual a.** 智力的；理智的

**intellectual n.** 知识分子

**18. turn one’s life around** to change the aim or direction of one’s life 改变某人的生活

**e.g.**

So go ahead and grab the opportunity to turn your life around by getting higher education diploma. 因此，抓住机遇，通过高等教育改变命运。

He decided to take part in the annual college entrance examination to turn his life around.

他决定参加一年一度的高考以改变自己的命运。

## **Get Relaxed**

### **Scripts**

### **Speeches by Steve Jobs**

Thank you. I'm honored to be with you today for your commencement from one of the finest universities in the world. Truth be told, I never graduated from college and this is the closest I've ever gotten to a college graduation.

Today I want to tell you three stories from my life. That's it. No big deal. Just three stories. The first story is about connecting the dots.

I dropped out of Reed College after the first six months but then stayed around as a drop-in for another 18 months or so before I really quit. So why did I drop out? It started before I was born. My biological mother was a young, unwed graduate student, and she decided to put me up for adoption. She felt very strongly that I should be adopted by college graduates, so everything was all set for me to be adopted at birth by a lawyer and his wife, except that when I popped out, they decided at the last minute that they really wanted a girl. So my parents, who were on a waiting list, got a call in the middle of the night asking, "We've got an unexpected baby boy. Do you want him?" They said, "Of course." My biological mother found out later that my mother had never graduated from



college and that my father had never graduated from high school. She refused to sign the final adoption papers. She only relented a few months later when my parents promised that I would go to college.

This was the start in my life. And 17 years later, I did go to college, but I naively chose a college that was almost as expensive as Stanford, and all of my working-class parents' savings were being spent on my college tuition. After six months, I couldn't see the value in it. I had no idea what I wanted to do with my life, and no idea of how college was going to help me figure it out, and here I was, spending all the money my parents had saved their entire life. So I decided to drop out and trust that it would all work out OK. It was pretty scary at the time, but looking back, it was one of the best decisions I ever made. The minute I dropped out, I could stop taking the required classes that didn't interest me and begin dropping in on the ones that looked far more interesting.

It wasn't all romantic. I didn't have a dorm room, so I slept on the floor in friends' rooms. I returned Coke bottles for the five-cent deposits to buy food with, and I would walk the seven miles across town every Sunday night to get one good meal a week at the Hare Krishna temple. I loved it. And much of what I stumbled into by following my curiosity and intuition turned out to be priceless later on. Let me give you one example.

Reed College at that time offered perhaps the best calligraphy instruction in the country. Throughout the campus every poster, every label on every drawer was beautifully hand-calligraphed. Because I had dropped out and didn't have to take the normal classes, I decided to take a calligraphy class to learn how to do this. I learned about serif and sans-serif typefaces, about varying the amount of space between different letter combinations, about what makes great typography great. It was beautiful, historical, artistically subtle in a way that science can't capture, and I found it fascinating.

None of this had even a hope of any practical application in my life. But ten years later when we were designing the first Macintosh computer, it all came back to me, and we designed it all into the Mac. It was the first computer with beautiful typography. If I had never dropped in on that single course in college, the Mac would have never had multiple typefaces or proportionally spaced fonts, and since Windows just copied the Mac, it's likely that no personal computer would have them.

If I had never dropped out, I would have never dropped in on that calligraphy class and personal computers might not have the wonderful typography that they do.

Of course it was impossible to connect the dots looking forward when I was in college, but it was very, very clear looking backwards ten years later. Again, you can't connect the dots looking forward. You can only connect them looking backwards, so you have to trust that the dots will somehow connect in your future. You have to trust in something—your gut, destiny, life, karma, whatever—because believing that the dots will connect down the road will give you the confidence to follow your heart, even when it leads you off the well-worn path, and that will make all the difference.

My second story is about love and loss. I was lucky. I found what I loved to do early in life. Woz and I started Apple in my parents' garage when I was 20. We worked hard and in ten years, Apple had grown from just the two of us in a garage into a \$2 billion company with over 4,000 employees. We'd just released our finest creation, the Macintosh, a year earlier, and I'd just turned 30, and then I got fired. How can you get fired from a company

you started? Well, as Apple grew, we hired someone who I thought was very talented to run the company with me, and for the first year or so, things went well. But then our visions of the future began to diverge, and eventually we had a falling out. When we did, our board of directors sided with him, and so at 30, I was out, and very publicly out. What had been the focus of my entire adult life was gone, and it was devastating. I really didn't know what to do for a few months. I felt that I had let the previous generation of entrepreneurs down, that I had dropped the baton as it was being passed to me. I met with David Packard and Bob Noyce and tried to apologize for screwing up so badly. I was a very public failure and I even thought about running away from the Valley. But something slowly began to dawn on me. I still loved what I did. The turn of events at Apple had not changed that one bit. I'd been rejected but I was still in love. And so I decided to start over. I didn't see it then, but it turned out that getting fired from Apple was the best thing that could have ever happened to me. The heaviness of being successful was replaced by the lightness of being a beginner again, less sure about everything. It freed me to enter one of the most creative periods in my life. During the next five years I started a company named NeXT, another company named Pixar and fell in love with an amazing woman who would become my wife. Pixar went on to create the world's first computer-animated feature film, "Toy Story," and is now the most successful animation studio in the world.

In a remarkable turn of events, Apple bought NeXT and I returned to Apple and the technology we developed at NeXT is at the heart of Apple's current renaissance, and Lorene and I have a wonderful family together. I'm pretty sure none of this would have happened if I hadn't been fired from Apple. It was awful-tasting medicine but I guess the patient needed it. Sometimes life's going to hit you in the head with a brick. Don't lose faith. I'm convinced that the only thing that kept me going was that I loved what I did. You've got to find what you love, and that is as true for work as it is for your lovers. Your work is going to fill a large part of your life, and the only way to be truly satisfied is to do what you believe is great work, and the only way to do great work is to love what you do. If you haven't found it yet, keep looking, and don't settle. As with all matters of the heart, you'll know when you find it, and like any great relationship it just gets better and better as the years roll on. So keep looking. Don't settle.

My third story is about death. When I was 17 I read a quote that went something like "If you live each day as if it was your last, someday you'll most certainly be right." It made an impression on me, and since then, for the past 33 years, I have looked in the mirror every morning and asked myself, "If today were the last day of my life, would I want to do what I am about to do today?" And whenever the answer has been "no" for too many days in a row, I know I need to change something. Remembering that I'll be dead soon is the most important thing I've ever encountered to help me make the big choices in life, because almost everything—all external expectations, all pride, all fear of embarrassment or failure—these things just fall away in the face of death, leaving only what is truly important. Remembering that you are going to die is the best way I know to avoid the trap of thinking you have something to lose. You are already naked. There is no reason not to follow your heart.

About a year ago, I was diagnosed with cancer. I had a scan at 7:30 in the morning and it clearly showed a tumor on my pancreas. I didn't even know what a pancreas was. The

doctors told me this was almost certainly a type of cancer that is incurable, and that I should expect to live no longer than three to six months. My doctor advised me to go home and get my affairs in order, which is doctors' code for "prepare to die." It means to try and tell your kids everything you thought you'd have the next ten years to tell them, in just a few months. It means to make sure that everything is buttoned up so that it will be as easy as possible for your family. It means to say your goodbyes.

I lived with that diagnosis all day. Later that evening I had a biopsy where they stuck an endoscope down my throat, through my stomach into my intestines, put a needle into my pancreas and got a few cells from the tumor. I was sedated but my wife, who was there, told me that when they viewed the cells under a microscope, the doctor started crying, because it turned out to be a very rare form of pancreatic cancer that is curable with surgery. I had the surgery and, thankfully, I am fine now.

This was the closest I've been to facing death, and I hope it's the closest I get for a few more decades. Having lived through it, I can now say this to you with a bit more certainty than when death was a useful but purely intellectual concept. No one wants to die, even people who want to go to Heaven don't want to die to get there, and yet, death is the destination we all share. No one has ever escaped it. And that is as it should be, because death is very likely the single best invention of life. It's life's change agent; it clears out the old to make way for the new. right now, the new is you. But someday, not too long from now, you will gradually become the old and be cleared away. Sorry to be so dramatic, but it's quite true. Your time is limited, so don't waste it living someone else's life. Don't be trapped by dogma, which is living with the results of other people's thinking. Don't let the noise of others' opinions drown out your own inner voice, and most important, have the courage to follow heart and intuition. They somehow already know what you truly want to become. Everything else is secondary.

When I was young, there was an amazing publication called The Whole Earth Catalogue, which was one of the bibles of my generation. It was created by a fellow named Stuart Brand not far from here in Menlo Park, and he brought it to life with his poetic touch. This was in the late 1960s, before personal computers and desktop publishing, so it was all made with typewriters, scissors, and Polaroid cameras. It was sort of like Google in paperback form 35 years before Google came along. It was idealistic, overflowing with neat tools and great notions. Stuart and his team put out several issues of the The Whole Earth Catalogue, and then when it had run its course, they put out a final issue. It was the mid-1970s and I was your age. On the back cover of their final issue was a photograph of an early morning country road, the kind you might find yourself hitch-hiking on if you were so adventurous. Beneath were the words, "Stay hungry, stay foolish." It was their farewell message as they signed off. "Stay hungry, stay foolish." And I have always wished that for myself, and now, as you graduate to begin anew, I wish that for you. Stay hungry, stay foolish.

Thank you all, very much.

## **Passage B**

### ***I. Background information***

In many community colleges all students enrolled in programs leading to A.A., A.S. degrees are required by the colleges to complete 30 credits of general education in a minimum of 7 of 10 areas. Students must take at least one course each in both Mathematics and Basic Communication and in 5 of the following 8 areas:

1. Natural Sciences
2. Social Sciences
3. American History
4. Western Civilization
5. World Civilizations
6. Humanities
7. The Arts
8. Foreign Language

Students who are planning to transfer to baccalaureate programs are strongly encouraged to take 3 of the 5 courses in Natural Science, Social Science, and the Humanities, as these areas are required in nearly all bachelor's degree programs. In addition, students must also demonstrate the following competencies, which are infused throughout the General Education program:

1. Critical Thinking (Reasoning)
2. Information Management

许多社区大学都要求学生都必须完成 7 至 10 个学科的课程，修满通识教育的 30 个学分才能获得准文理学士学位。数学和基本通信学科的课程，学生必须各修一门，下列 8 个学科中学生可以选修 5 个学科相关的课程：

1. 自然科学
2. 社会科学
3. 美国历史
4. 西方文明
5. 世界文明
6. 人文科学
7. 艺术
8. 外语

自然科学、社会科学和人文科学的课程共有 5 门，学生如果想进修学士学位，至少选修其中 3 门。因为几乎所有学士学位课程都要求必修这些科目。除此之外，学生还必须通过通识教育课程展示辩证思维和信息处理的能力。

## ***II. Text division***

Para.A	The importance of selecting the right course.		
Para.B-H	Tips on selecting the right course.	Para.B-C	Take your personal interest and future ideal job into account.
		Para.D-F	Conduct a research in respect of its outlines, durations and facilities.
		Para.G-H	Take the course demand, cost and career prospects into consideration in advance

## ***Section Two***

### **Reading**

#### **Guessing unknown words by word formation**

## (prefixes)

A prefix is placed at the beginning of a word to modify or change its meaning. This is a list of the most common prefixes in English, together with their basic meaning and some examples. You can find more details or precision for each prefix in any good dictionary. Generally speaking, a prefix only changes the meaning of a word rather its part of speech with the exception of en-.

Prefix		Meaning	Examples
anti-	<i>also</i> ant-	opposing, against, the opposite	anti-aircraft, antibiotic, anticlimax, Antarctic
dis-	<i>also</i> di-	Negation, removal, expulsion	disadvantage, dismount, disbud, disbar
en-	<i>also</i> em-	put into or on	engulf, enmesh
		bring into the condition of	enlighten, embitter
		intensification	entangle, enrage
in-	<i>also</i> il-, im- un	not, without	infertile, inappropriate, impossible, unlike
	<i>also</i> il-, im-, ir-	in, into, towards, inside	influence, influx, imbibe
infra-		below	Infrared, infrastructure
inter-		between, among	interact, interchange
micro-		very small	microwave, microchip
		one millionth part of	micrometer, microgram
non-		Absence, negation	non-smoker, non-alcoholic
out-		Surpassing, exceeding	outperform
		external, away from	outbuilding, outboard
over-		Excessively, completely	overconfident, overburdened, overjoyed
post-		after in time or order	postpone

pre-		before in time, place, order or importance	pre-adolescent, prelude, precondition
re-		again	repaint, reappraise, reawake
sub-	also suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur-, sus-	at a lower position	submarine, subsoil
		lower in rank	Sub-lieutenant
		Nearly, approximately	sub-tropical
un-		Not	unacceptable, unreal, unhappy, unmanned
		reversal or cancellation of action or state	unplug, unmask
under-		beneath, below	Underarm, undercarriage
		lower in rank	undersecretary
		not enough	underdeveloped

## Writing

### An envelop

**To address an envelope, the following three items should be included:**

**ADDRESS:** This is the name and address of the person (recipient) you are sending the letter to.

**RETURN ADDRESS:** This is the information about the sender of the letter in the top left corner with separate lines.

**STAMP:** In the top right corner of the envelope you place a postage stamp. This pays for the delivery of the letter.

#### Steps taken to write an address in English

**1. Write the name of the recipient on the first line.** The first line should contain the name of the person who will be receiving the letter. How you write the name should depend on how he or she likes to be addressed. If, for instance, you know your aunt prefers a certain level of anonymity, you could simply list her as "P. Jones," instead of "Polly Jones."

Include any necessary titles. You can probably skip titles for close friends and family members, but you might consider including them for government officials, military personnel, doctors, professors, or elderly people. For instance, if you were addressing a letter to your elderly aunt Polly who was widowed many years ago, you might call her "Mrs. Polly Jones."

**2. Place the letter in care of someone else (optional).** If you're sending someone a





letter to an address where he or she does not regularly reside, it might be wise to include a "care of" or "courtesy of" line below the name.

Write "c/o" before the name of the person who does live there, the hotel, the hostel, etc.

For instance, if your aunt Polly is staying with a cousin for a few weeks and you're sending her a letter there, you might write "c/o Henry Roth" below her name.

**3. Write the street address or post office box number on the second line.** If you're writing a street address, be sure to include any directional notation (such as "400 West" instead of simply "400") or apartment numbers. If the street address and apartment number are so long that they don't fit on one line, just write the apartment number on the line below the street address.

For example, if your friend lives on 50 Oakland Avenue in apartment #206, write, "50 Oakland Ave, #206."

You can use some abbreviations for the type of street it is, as long as you use them correctly. You can write blvd instead of boulevard, ctr instead of center, ct instead of court, dr instead of drive, ln instead of lane and so on.

If you're addressing a letter using a PO box, there's no need to include the street address of the post office. Based on the ZIP code, the postal service will know where the PO box is.

**4. Write the city, state, and ZIP code on the third line.** The state should be abbreviated with two letters, not spelled out.

You can use a 9-digit ZIP code, though you don't have to. Five digits should be enough.

**5. If you're mailing from another country, write the country's name on the address.** If you're sending a letter from outside the US, you'll need to change your format slightly. Write the city and state on one line, "United States of America" on the line beneath that, and the ZIP code on the last line.

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 词义选择 (1)

词义的选择和词义引申是翻译中最常用的翻译技巧，如：

- a leader of the new school, school 是“学派”的意思，而不是“学校”的意思；
- elegant system, elegant 是“完美，完善”的意思，而不是“优雅”的意思；
- And house appliances will become so smart that..., smart 是“智能化”的意思，而不是“聪明”的意思；

like the concept of set in mathematics, set 是“集，集合”而不是“一套，放置”等意思.....。

由此可见，一词多义的现象在英语中十分普遍。在翻译时，词义的选择应从以下几个方面着手。

#### 1. 根据词性确定词义

如：book 这个单词，在作名词时，意思是“书，书籍”；用作动词却常表示“预订，预约”的意思。

如：while 作连词时，有“当...的时候，而，虽然”等意思；作名词时，却指“片刻，一会儿”；作动词，又有“消磨”的意思。遇到这种情况，如果不弄清楚词性，常常就会将词义搞错，进而影响原文的正确理解和准确翻译。因此在翻译时，我们可以根据语法关系来辨别关键词的词性，以便能准确地判断词义。如：





## light

This light is too poor to read by.

这光线太暗不能看书。(名词)

Aluminum is a light metal.

铝是一种轻金属。(形容词)

Could you light the fire for me?

你替我点上火好吗?(动词)

## round

The iron ball is not completely round.

那个铁球并不是完全圆的。(形容词)

Lets go into the hall and have a look round.

让我们进大厅转一转。(副词)

Girls are dancing in a round

女孩们围成一圈跳舞。(名词)

They worked round the day.

他们工作了一整天。(介词)

The kid's eyes rounded with excitement.

这孩子兴奋得眼睛睁得圆圆的。(动词)

## 2. 根据上下文确定词义

我们以动词 **move** 为例,如果上下文不一样,move 的意思显然也是不一样,必须依据上下文才能做到准确通顺的翻译。

That car was really moving.

那汽车跑得可真快。

Share prices moved ahead today.

股票价格今日上扬。

The story of their sufferings moved us deeply.

他们的苦难经历深深打动了我们。

Work on the teaching building is moving quickly.

教学楼的工程进展得很快。

The principal's opinions on this matter haven't moved.

校长对这件事的看法没有改变。

I move that we support the introduction of this new technological process.

我提议我们支持采用这一新工艺方法。

She moves in the highest circles of society.

她生活在高级社交圈里。

Unless the trade union moves quickly, there will be strike.

工会若不尽快采取措施,就要引起一场罢工。

## 3. 根据汉语习惯搭配确定词义

如: a deep well 是指深井; a deep voice 低沉的嗓音; a deep red 鲜红色; deep in study 专心学习; a deep mystery 难以理解的奥妙; a deep thinker 知识渊博的思想家; deep outrage 强烈的愤怒。

又如动词 **work** 在翻译时如果上下文不同,汉语习惯搭配也不一样,翻译时应该选择不同的词义来表达。

I think your proposal will work.

我想你的建议行得通。

The new remedy works like magic.

新疗法疗效神奇。

My watch doesn't work.

我的表不走了。

The sea works high.

海浪汹涌起伏。

The old lady worked her way to the front.

老太太好不容易才挤到前面。

The root of the pine tree worked down between the stones.

松树的树根在石缝间扎下去。

The new traffic regulation is working well

新交规执行得很顺利。

## **Section Three**

### **How to select books in a library**

**1. Investigate.** If this is your first time in a library that is new to you, take some time to look around and get to know the place. Notice the signs in the building and the overall system. If it's a larger building, look for maps or directories near the entrance.

Notice that shelves and areas are marked with the types of materials that are in them. Pay particular attention to sections that interest you.

**2. Consult the catalog.** Many libraries now have computerized catalogs available on computer terminals throughout the building. Some might still have an old card catalog on index cards in drawers. Either way, there are some standard ways to search a card catalog.

**Title search:** If you know the book's title, you can search for it. In a paper card catalog, you will search alphabetically. In general, though, ignore "a" or "the" if it is the first word. Thus, *The Count of Monte Cristo* will be filed alphabetically under "Count". Computerized catalogs vary, but you will usually select a title search and type in at least the first few words of the title.

**Author search:** If you know the author of the book, or if you are interested in other works by a favorite author, you can search for that. Authors are usually listed by their last names.

**Subject search:** If you know what you want to read about, or you're searching for particular information, but you don't know the title of a specific book, try a subject search. A subject that is too broad may turn up too many results, including other related subjects. A subject that is too narrow may not be cataloged. If you don't find quite what you want the first time, try searching on different words.

**Keyword search:** Most electronic catalogs will let you search on a keyword or words. For example, searching on the keyword "French" would find any book with that word in the title, be it about French cooking, French tourism, or French kissing.

**3. Notice whether your book is checked out.** Many computerized catalogs, especially, tie in to the circulation database to tell you whether a book is on the shelves or is unavailable. If it is checked out, seeing that now can save you a trip.

**4. Make notes.** When you find the book you want in the catalog, write down the call number and any other information about the location of the book. Most libraries offer scraps of paper near their catalogs. This information tells you where to find the book.

Remember that Non-fiction books will be shelved separately by some kind of classification system (the most popular are the Dewey Decimal System and the Library of Congress Classification system.) Each book is given a number according to its subject matter. The books are then arranged in order on the shelves by these numbers.

Fiction books are arranged alphabetically by the author's last name. If you look for *The Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy* by title, the catalog will tell you to look for the book in the Fiction section under Adams. Some libraries divide out certain genres of fiction, such as mystery, romance, westerns and science fiction. If your book is one of these, write that down, too.

**5. Go and get the books in your selection.** Follow the signs in the library, then the labels on the ends of the shelves, and then the labels on the spine of each book to locate your book.

Remember that if you have found a non-fiction book on a topic in which you are interested, only some of the rest of the library stock will also be in the same area. Oversize books and special collections may be housed elsewhere.

---

## • Suggested Versions

### *Passage A*

#### 高等教育意义重大

有些人渴望高中毕业后直接踏上赚钱谋生之路，过上独立自主、无拘无束的生活，对于他们来说，是否上大学就成为了他们纠结的问题。大学之后你的生活会有什么变化呢？大学教育将使你获益匪浅。

大学教育帮助你成长和发展。在中学，你少有机会体验生活，而进入大学后，你首先会远离家庭，变得独立。因此，你得学会依靠自己。大学期间，如果你态度端正，且真正想学习和研究的话，你的眼界是无限的。你可以通过阅读大量书籍或聆听相关领域专家的讲座来增长知识。大学生活还将教给你许多人生的必修课，让你有机会真正地、全面地了解自己。

随着经济全球化的到来，就业市场的竞争越来越激烈。现在你所面临的竞争对手不仅仅来自国内，还有来自其它国家的移民。那么，与竞争对手相比你有什么优势呢？当然是你的大学学历、专业知识以及其它技能。众所周知，学历越高就业机会就越大。更重要的是，拥有大学学历，工作单位还会为你提供医疗保险和养老保险。劳工局（BLS）的研究也表明，学历的高低也与收入水平和就业率成正比。因此，大学文凭是通向美好生活的绿卡。

高等教育也将促进志愿者工作的开展和模范公民的培养。研究表明，拥有高学历的人过上理想生活后，更愿意从事社会活动和志愿者工作。这些高尚的行为给很多人都带来关爱，如流浪者、老年人和残疾人能够得到更好的照顾。另一方面，人们普遍认为，模范公民多来自受过良好教育同时具有较高收入的人群。他们遵守社会规范，很少有反社会的行为。拥有

较好教育背景的人能更加宽容地对待他人，这将有利社会和谐。他们将成为优秀的搭档、家长及员工。高标准的生活水平、幸福的家庭以及和谐的社会将从整体上强化国力。

高等教育的益处还可以从它对个体的经济、情感、社交以及智力等方面的帮助来评价。政府、地方社区俱乐部甚至企业为高等教育提供的各种奖学金，让大学教育基金的建成变得不仅是一项任务。因此，请接受高等教育，抓住机遇，改变命运。

## Passage B

### 选择合适的课程

选择合适的课程很重要，因为它会影响你的未来。

你对什么感兴趣？列出你感兴趣的学习领域，同时也列出上述领域可能会涉及的课程。举出你在高中阶段最感兴趣的课题以及你最羡慕的工作。

互联网、报纸、电视，以及你周围的人是最好的信息来源。上网搜索一下你感兴趣的课程并了解其职业前景和其他信息。同从事你感兴趣职业的人交流，了解相关情况来帮助你选择未来的职业。已完成大学学业的人可以从一个学生的角度给予你更加明智的建议，他们可以告诉你其中的优劣。

为避免犯错，请务必在网上查询你想要选择的课程大纲。了解你必须学习的课程、学习方法、作业及考试，这将有助于你对今后的学习有大体的了解。

如果你心仪某所大学，不要让这种喜爱主宰你的课程选择。上网比较一下各个学校的课程大纲和教学设施，看看是否能满足你学习的需求，再做出正确的选择。如果可能的话，参观一下大学，听一些讲座，对未来的课程有一个亲身感受。

确定你能全身心地投入学习，同时了解学习相关课程所需要的时间。至于双学位、全日制或半工半读都取决于你的选择。你需要平衡好学习和其他事宜的先后顺序。弹性学习制度视学校而言，各有不同。

热门课程，特别是那些市场需求高的课程，通常都很难选上。然而这些课程却能衡量你是否能够很好的完成学业。不幸的是，有些课程要么非常难选上，要么非常难修完。所以选课必须量力而行。如果你对选上最喜欢的课程没有信心的话，可以研究一下其他大学或类似课程的情况。

选课时，支付能力是你需要考虑的另一个因素，此外，可能产生的额外费用，如书本费、实地考察费等也应包含在内。然而，不要让费用阻碍你选择职业，因为你可以通过各种资助项目完成学业。

选课前应考虑职业前景，综合考虑收入、安全、压力、责任及福利等各种因素，同时也要考虑未来的雇主是否愿意花钱让你继续接受教育等因素。

# • Suggested Keys and Scripts

## **Get Started**

1. T          2. T

## **Reading for Meaning**

**Task 1**          1. B      2. D      3. A          4. D      5. C

**Task 2**          1. T      2. F      3. F      4. T      5. F

### **Task 3**

**1. Faculty:** dean of studies 教务处长, dean of students 教导主任, department chairman 系主任, professor 教授, guest professor 客座教授, lecturer 讲师, teaching assistant 助教, supervisor 论文导师。

**2. Student:** graduate student 研究生, international student 留学生, undergraduate 本科生, government-supported student 公费生, commoner 自费生, day-student 走读生, boarder 寄宿生, evening student 夜校生, guest student 旁听生(英)/auditor 旁听生(美), repeater 留级生, freshman 大学一年级学生, sophomore 大学二年级学生, junior 大学三年级学生, senior 大学四年级学生。

**3. Curriculum:** minor 辅修课, specialized course 专业课, compulsory course 必修课, optional /elective course 选修课。

**4. School:** college 学院, academy 高等专科院校, normal school 师范院校, institute 学院。

**5. Degree:** post doctorate 博士后, doctor(Ph.D) 博士, master 硕士, bachelor 学士。

**6. Activity:** social practice 社会实践, physical activity 体育活动, recreational activity 娱乐活动, academic activities 学术活动, social activity 社会活动。

## **Reading for Language**

**Task 4**      1. are inclined    2. immigrant    3. globalization    4. emploment    5. cultivation  
6. competitive    7. intellectual    8. promotion          9.harmonious  
10.consequently

**Task 5**      1. distinguishes from    2. is more likely to    3. get enrolled in  
4. contribute to              5.has turned his college life around

**Task 6**      1. Germen—Germans    2.son-in-laws—sons-in-law    3. woman—women    4.  
polices — police    5. aid —aids    6. can judged— can be judged

## **Reading for Comprehension**

**Task 1**      1. sources of information    2. outline    3. lectures          4.otherpriorities  
5.career prospects

**Task 2**      1.future success    2. completed university courses    3. a rough idea  
4.competitive courses    5. Financial assistance options

## **Listening &Speaking**

**Task 1**          1. B    2. B    3. B    4. C    5. C

### Scripts

1. M. What does Management Diploma course involve?  
W. You would join an evening class and have a lecture twice a week.  
Q. How many lectures will the man have each week?
2. M. What about the computers? Can I use them free of charge?  
W. For university students it is free, but for external members like you, the first three hours are free and then we will charge 1\$ for each hour thereafter.  
Q. How much will the man pay if he uses the computer for 4 hours?
3. W. Where is the staff room, in case I need to find a teacher at some stage?  
M. The staff room is near the main entrance, on the left over there, just opposite the Reception desk.  
Q. Where is the reception desk?
4. W. Professor Johnson, it is really a big assignment. Can I get an extension of time to finish it?  
M. But extensions are normally given only for medical reasons.  
Q. What does the professor imply?
5. M. I've got a meeting now. Can we have tutorial again later this week? What about Friday morning?  
W. Suits me. Eleven o'clock?  
Q. What is the probable relationship between the two speakers?

**Task 2** 1. Smith 2. Taylor 3. Kingston 4. 98386577 5. DA580 6. May

### Scripts

A: Oh hello, I'd like to join the net library.  
B: All right. Would you like to fill in the application form?  
A: No problem.  
B: Hold on and I will get a form. OK, a few questions for you.  
B: What is your full name?  
A: Taylor Smith.  
B: Smith?  
A: You are right.  
B: OK, and what's your address?  
A: Apartment 2, 36, Kingston Street, Redhill.  
B: Kingston Street, that's just opposite the post office, isn't it?  
A: Yes.  
B: Mm. And your telephone number? I need both home and work.  
A: Home is 98386577 and work is 95461325. Do you need any ID or anything like that?  
B: Of course, we need your driving license number if you have.  
A: No problem. It's DA580.  
B: Could you tell me your date of birth, please?  
A: May 25<sup>th</sup>, 1993.  
B: OK, signature here.

**Task 3** Question 1. What is the name of the college? Could you tell me the name of the college?

Question 2. How long will the course last?

Question 3. What are the language requirements?

Answer1. In Cardiff

Answer2. Finance, dentistry and nutrition

Answer3. \$30000 each year

Scripts

Question1: Do you know where the college is?

Question 2: What are the key majors of the college?

Question3: How much should a student pay each year? /How much is the tuition per year?

**Task 4**

**Enjoy your time**



## English Song

To Sir With Love

(吾爱吾师)

Those schoolgirl days of telling tales,  
And biting nails are gone.  
But in my mind I know they will  
Still live on and on.  
But how do you thank someone,  
Who has taken you from crayons to perfume?  
It isn't easy, but I'll try.

If you wanted the sky,  
I would write across the sky in letters,  
That would soar a thousand feet high,  
"To Sir, With Love."

The time has come for closing books,  
And long last looks must end.  
And as I leave, I know that  
I am leaving my best friend.  
A friend who taught me right from wrong,  
And weak from strong  
That's a lot to learn,  
What, what can I give you in return?



If you wanted the moon,  
I would try to make a start,  
But I would rather you let me,  
Give my heart, "To Sir, With Love."

**Task 5** a. 无限的 b. 回顾 c. 不可能的

**Task 6**

1. in	a.	不够好的; 不足的
2. en	v.	使丰富
3. un	n.	失业
4. in	a.	不活跃的
5. re	n.	重新装修
6. ir	a.	不相关的
7. mis	v	不信任
8. il	a.	不合乎逻辑的
9. dis	v.	不同意
10. im	a.	不道德的

### Task 7

1. You can meet new people and make connections.
2. You also can gain social contacts and establish friendships.
3. In addition, you have opportunities to take part in some exciting events.
4. And you will learn about the world around.
5. But more importantly, you are offered the chance to transfer classroom theory into practice.

### Task 8

Gorge Wang  
23, Lane 130, Nanking East Rd.  
Nanping, Chongqing, 403002  
P R C

Mike Clinton  
1025 Long Street  
San Francisco, CA 94101  
US

**Task 9** 1.利息/ 兴趣 2. 易于/题目 3.余额/均衡 4.书房/攻读 5. 表明/建议

**Task10** 1. 弹性学习制度视学校而言, 各有不同。

2. 劳工局 (BLS) 的研究也表明, 学历的高低也与收入水平和就业率成正比。
3. 大学期间, 如果你态度端正, 且真正想学习和研究的话, 你的眼界是无限的。
4. 如果你心仪某所大学, 不要让这种喜爱主宰你的课程选择。
5. 确定你能全身心地投入学习, 同时了解学习相关课程所需要的时间。至于双学位、全日制或半工半读都取决于你的选择。你需要平衡好学习和其他事宜的

先后顺序。

## **Workshop**

### **Task 1**

Picture 1. **circulation desk**

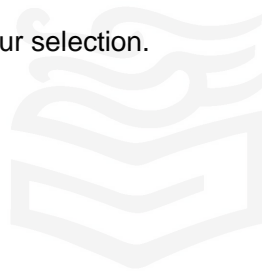
Picture 2. **on the shelf**

Picture 3. **by its rules**

Picture 4. **librarian**

### **Task 2**

1. Investigate.
2. Consult a catalogue (Title search/Author search/Subject search/Keyword search.)
3. Notice whether your book is checked out or not.
4. Make notes.
5. Go and get the book(s) in your selection.



高等教育出版社

# Unit Two

## Idling Your Spare Time

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	Entertainment, influential, donate, establish, misjudgment, decline, investment, challenge, launch, charitarian			
	put one's dream to, go downhill, tower over, in sharp contrast to, with the emphasis on			
	Adjectives and Adverbs			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	Entertainment s	Suffixes	A letter	Selecting sense of a word (2)
<b>Workshops</b>	1.Talking about how to order magazines online		2.Talking about how to select magazines online	

#### Section One

#### Passage A

#### I. Background information



1. Sir Run Run Shaw (23 November 1907-7 January 2014) also known as Shao Yifu and Shao Renleng, was a Hong Kong entertainment mogul and philanthropist. Run Run Shaw was born in Ningbo, Zhejiang, China, and moved to Shanghai as a child. He was the youngest of the six sons. The old Shanghai people called him "Shao Laoliu", when he moved to Hong Kong, he was known as "Uncle Six". Where there are Chinese, there are movies from Shaw Brothers and TV programs from Shaw's TVB. In 1958, he founded the Shaw Brothers Studio in Hong Kong, which produced more than thousand Chinese films. Furthermore, Shaw's Television Broadcasts Limited (TVB, also Wireless Television) was the dominant television company in Hong Kong. He received a knighthood in 1977 from Queen Elizabeth II and became the first person who won the "Sir" title in Hong Kong entertainment industry. Shaw had committed to charity, who donated billions of Hong Kong dollars to educational institutions in Hong Kong and mainland China. A number of colleges and universities have the building named "Yifu Building" in China. He also established the Shaw Prize, often referred to as the Nobel Prize of Asia.

邵逸夫爵士（1907年11月19日—2014年1月7日），原名邵仁楞，号逸夫，香港娱乐业大亨、慈善家，祖籍浙江宁波镇海，后移居上海。邵逸夫在邵家排行第六，旧上海时代人称“邵老六”，到香港后尊称“六叔”。有华人的地方，就有邵逸夫旗下的邵氏电影和香港无线电视旗下的电视节目。邵逸夫于1958年在香港成立了邵氏兄弟电影公司，拍摄过逾千部华语电影，另外他旗下的电视广播有限公司（TVB，惯称无线电视）亦主导香港的电视行业。1977年，邵被英女王伊丽莎白二世册封为下级勋位爵士，成为香港娱乐业获“爵士”头衔的第一人。邵逸夫生前曾致力于慈善事业，历年捐助香港和大陆的教育机构超过100多亿港元。中国很多高等院校均有以邵逸夫命名的“逸夫楼”。他亦成立了有东方诺贝尔奖之称的“邵逸夫奖”。



2. Shaw Brothers (HK) Ltd. was the largest film production company in Hong Kong. In

1958, Run Run Shaw and Runme Shaw founded Shaw Brothers (HK) Ltd. and made films in Hong Kong. Run Run was the president. In 1970s, Shaw Brothers got into the rapid development industry—the TV industry in Hong Kong. In 1980, Run Run Shaw became the largest shareholder of TVB. At the same time, Shaw's film business continued to shrink and reduced the film production. Over the years, Shaw Brothers produced more than 1,000 films, before film production was suspended in 1987. In 2011, Shaw Brothers was renamed into the Clear Water Bay Land Company Limited, its film production business being taken over by other companies within the Shaw conglomerate.

邵氏兄弟（香港）有限公司是香港最大的电影制作公司。1958 年，邵逸夫与邵仁枚成立邵氏兄弟（香港）有限公司，在香港制作电影，邵逸夫任总裁。19 世纪 70 年代，邵氏兄弟踏足当时发展迅速的香港电视行业。1980 年，邵逸夫成为无线电视最大股东。同期，邵氏的电影业务不断收缩，减少电影。在 1987 年邵氏宣布停止生产电影之前，邵氏兄弟已制片超过一千部。2011 年，邵氏兄弟更名为清水湾土地有限公司，其电影制作发行业务由原集团下的其他公司代行。



3. Television Broadcasts Limited, commonly known as TVB, was founded by Run Run Shaw on 19 November 1967. TVB is the first wireless commercial television station in Hong Kong, and one of the largest commercial Chinese program producers in the world with a staff of about 5,070. So far, TVB is the only Chinese TV media which fully covers the mainland China, Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan in the world. TVB was the Top 3 in the 2013 annual "Asia Television Brand Top 10" (in order, CCTV, NHK, TVB, Phoenix Satellite TV, HBS).

电视广播有限公司，又称 TVB，于 1967 年 11 月 19 日由邵逸夫创立。TVB 是香港首间商业无线电视台，也是世界第一大华语商营电视台，拥有员工约 5070 人。至今，香港无线电视是全球唯一一家能够全面覆盖两岸三地的华语电视媒体。在 2013 年度“亚洲电视品牌 10 强”中，无线电视跻身第 3 名(依次为 CCTV、NHK、TVB、凤凰卫视、HBS)。

## ***II. Outline***

Para. 1-2	Shaw's accomplishments in the fields of entertainment and charity.
Para. 3	The decline of Shaw's movie town in the mid-1980s.
Para. 4-5	The prosperity of Shaw's TVB in Chinese-speaking world.
Para.6-7	Shaw's donations to educational institutions in the world.

## ***III. Detailed study of Passage A***

1. The last sentence of Paragraph 1 “He was a Hong Kong entertainment tycoon, one of the most influential figures in the Asian entertainment industry, who founded the Shaw Brothers Studio and Television Broadcasts Limited, a legend in film and television production.” can be paraphrased as follows:

He was a great businessman in HK entertainment industry, and also played an important role in Asian film and television production. He established two companies: Shaw Brothers Studio and Television Broadcasts Limited, both of which had achieved great success in this field.

**2. influential** a. having influence or having the status, wealth, etc. 有影响的, 有地位的  
**e.g.**

Run Run Shaw was one of the most influential figures in the Asian entertainment industry.  
邵逸夫是亚洲娱乐产业最具影响力的人物之一。

It is a committee of influential directors and actors.

这是由一些具有影响力的导演和演员组成的一个委员会。

**influence** n. & v. 影响力; 作用

**have an influence on** 对...有影响

**influenced** a. 受影响的

**3. entertainment** n. a kind of activities or performances that can give people pleasure  
娱乐

**Synonyms** amusement, recreation

**e.g.**

Run Run Shaw was a Hong Kong entertainment tycoon.

邵逸夫是香港娱乐行业的巨头。

Television has displaced film as our  
most popular form of entertainment.

country's

电视已取代了电影, 成为我国最大众化的娱乐形式。

**entertain** v. 娱乐; 招待

**entertaining** a. 令人愉快的

**entertainer** n. 表演者; 艺人

**entertainingly** ad. 令人愉快地

**4. put one's big dream to** to achieve one's goal in life 将梦想付诸于...

**e.g.**

Run Run put his big dream to work.

邵先生将他的雄心壮志都付诸于实践。

Now you can put your big dream to the film studio and bring it to life.

你可以将你的雄心壮志投入到电影工作室, 再将它们带到生活中去。

**5. donate** v. to give (money, goods, etc.) to charity, contribute sth. 捐赠 (财物等)

**e.g.**

Shaw donated billions of Hong Kong dollars to educational institutions in Hong Kong, mainland China and Western countries as well.

邵先生向香港、大陆和西方国家的教育机构捐款上亿港元。

Several super stars donated large sums to relief organizations.

几位巨星向求助机构捐赠巨款。

**donation** n. 捐赠物

**6. establish** v. to set (sth) on a firm or permanent basis. 建立, 设立 (某事物)

**Synonyms** set up, put up, found

**e.g.**

He moved permanently from Southeast Asia to Hong Kong and established Shaw Brothers Studio. 他 50 多岁才从东南亚定居香港, 并创立了邵氏兄弟有限公司。

They have established a business relationship for a long time.

他们已建立了长期的商业合作关系。

**establishment** n. 设立; 机构

**established** a. 已建立的; 已制定的

**7. go downhill** to get worse (in health, fortune, social status, etc.) (健康状况, 运气, 社会地位等)每况愈下, 恶化

**e.g.**

However, Shaw's film business was going downhill.

然而, 邵氏电影事业持续下滑。

This film studio used to be fashionable, but it's starting to go downhill.

该电影工作室一度很繁华, 如今已开始江河日下了。

**8. misjudgment** n. an incorrect idea or opinion that is formed about someone or something 误判

**e.g.**

Despite Shaw's misjudgment on the final golden age of Hong Kong film, he succeeded in predicting the dawn of television business.

尽管邵先生错误地判断了香港电影最后的黄金时代, 他却成功地预见香港电视产业的黎明。

This was a huge misjudgment in the development of their studio.

这在他的工作室发展史上是一个巨大的失误。

**misjudge** v. 错误估计

**9. decline** v. becoming less in quality, importance or strength 下降, 下滑 (身体、产业等); 谢绝

**Synonyms** fall, go downhill

**e.g.**

Shaw's influence on movie production began to decline.

邵先生在电影产业的影响开始减弱。

The decline in sales embarrassed our company.

销售下降使我们公司陷于困境。

**declination** n. 偏差

**10. investment** n. the act of investing money 投资, 投入

**e.g.**

With his influence on movie production declining in the late 1970s and early '80s, his investment in Television Broadcasts Ltd grew constantly.

伴随 70 年代末 80 年代初邵先生在电影产业的影响力减弱, 他对香港无线电视有限公司的投资却不断增加。

Every minute of time you spend should be seen as an investment.

你花费的每一分钟都应看作是一项投资。

**invest** v. 投资



**investable a.** 可供投资的

**investor n.** 投资者

**investee n.** 投资对象

**11.** The first sentence of Paragraph 5 “Unlike the film market, Shaw's TV status has never been challenged in Hong Kong.” can be paraphrased as follows:

In sharp contrast to the film market, nobody could challenge Shaw's TV status in Hong Kong.

**12. challenge v.** simulate somebody's ability to face difficult or demanding tasks 挑战

**Synonym** dare

**e.g.**

Unlike the film market, Shaw's TV status has never been challenged in Hong Kong.

与电影市场不同，邵氏电视在香港的地位从未受到挑战。

Challenge yourself and discover your voice!

挑战自我而且发现自己的声音!

**challenging a.** 挑战的

**challengeable a.** 挑战性的

**challenger n.** 挑战者

**13. tower over** overcome, exceed 高出; 胜过

**e.g.**

In recent decades, the big name stars produced by his TV Empire have towered over Chinese-language film.

近几十年来，其电视帝国打造的巨星远超过华语电影行业。

It seems that his shares have towered over all the other shareholders in their film corporation.

在他们电影公司，他的股份好像远超过其他的股东。

**14. in sharp contrast to** to be opposed to, having big difference between 与...形成鲜明对比

**e.g.**

Shaw's strict ways in business were in sharp contrast to his charity.

邵先生对生意的严厉方式与他对待慈善事业的方式形成鲜明对比。

The white walls stand in sharp contrast to the yellow flowers, green trees and grey hills in the theme park.

主题公园中白色的墙与黄色的花、绿色的树、灰色的山形成鲜明对比。

**15. launch v.** to start a large and important activity 发起

**e.g.**

Run Run Shaw launched a charity foundation focus on education.

邵逸夫发起了一个以教育为重心的慈善基金。

The Huayi Brothers Media Corporation will launch an extensive charity program next year.

华谊兄弟将于明年开始一项大规模的慈善项目。

**launching n.** 创设; 发射

**launcher n.** 发射器; 发射者

**16. with the emphasis on** to lay stress on 强调; 着重于

**e.g.**

In 1973, he launched a charity foundation with the emphasis on education.

1973 年，他成立了以教育为重心的慈善基金。

Every theme park has taken different management methods with the emphasis on safety.

各主题公园都采取了不同的管理办法来着重强调安全问题。

**17. charitarian** n. a person committing himself to charity 慈善家

**e.g.**

As a world-known charitarian, Shaw donated HK\$6.5 billion to charities.

作为一名享誉全球的慈善家，邵先生捐赠了 65 亿港元。

Mr Liu is not only a very famous actor but also a charitarian, he contributed money to help 312 poor children to receive good education.

刘先生不仅是一名著名演员还是一位慈善家，捐钱资助了 312 名贫困儿童接受好的教育。

**charitable a.** 慈善事业的；慷慨的，仁慈的

**charity n.** 慈善

## ***Get Relaxed***

## **Scripts**

### **Subtitles of Frozen (Episode)**

**Hans:** We are here to find Princess Anna. Be on guard, but no harm is to come to the Queen. Do you understand?

**The Guards:** Yes, Sir. The Queen. Up there! Come on! We got her.

**Elsa:** No, please. Stay away!

**The Guards:** Fire! Fire. Get her! Get her!

**Hans:** Queen Elsa! Don't be the monster they fear you are.

**Elsa:** No. What have I done? Why did you bring me here?

**Hans:** I couldn't just let them kill you.

**Elsa:** But I'm a danger to Arendelle. Get Anna.

**Hans:** Anna has not returned. If you would just stop the winter, bring back summer...please.

**Elsa:** Don't you see... I can't. You have to tell them to let me go.

**Hans:** I will do what I can.

**Kristoff:** Just hang in there. Come on, buddy, faster!

**Olaf:** I'll meet you guys at the castle!

**Kristoff:** Stay out of sight, Olaf!

**Olaf:** I will.

**The Civilians:** It's Princess Anna!

**Anna:** Are you g-gonna be okay?

**Kristoff:** Don't worry about me.

**The Civilians:** Anna! Oh, you had us worried sick. My lady.

**Kristoff:** Get her warm and find Prince Hans, immediately.

**The Civilians:** We will. Thank you.

**Kristoff:** Make sure she's safe!

**Hans:** I'm going back out to look for Princess Anna.

**The Ministers:** You cannot risk going out there again.

**Hans:** If anything happens to her...

**The Ministers:** If anything happens to the Princess, you are all Arendelle has left.

**The Civilians:** He's in here. Prince Hans.

**Hans:** Anna. You're so cold.

**Anna:** Hans, you have to kiss me.

**Hans:** What?

**Anna:** Now. Now.

**The Civilians:** We'll give you two some privacy.

**Hans:** What happened out there?

**Anna:** Elsa struck me with her powers.

**Hans:** You said she'd never hurt you.

**Anna:** I was wrong.

**Hans:** Anna?

**Anna:** She froze my heart and only an act of true love can save me.

**Hans:** A true love's kiss. Oh, Anna. If only there was someone out there who loved you.

**Anna:** What? You said you did.

**Hans:** As thirteenth in line in my own kingdom, I didn't stand a chance. I knew. I'd have to marry into the throne somewhere.

**Anna:** What are you talking about?

**Hans:** As heir, Elsa was preferable, of course. But no one was getting anywhere with her. But you...

**Anna:** Hans?

**Hans:** You were so desperate for love. You were willing to marry me, just like that. I figured, after we married, I'd have to stage a little accident for Elsa.

**Anna:** Hans. No, stop.

**Hans:** But then she doomed herself, and you were dumb enough to go after her.

**Anna:** Please.

**Hans:** All that's left now is to kill Elsa and bring back summer.

**Anna:** You're no match for Elsa.

**Hans:** No, you're no match for Elsa. I, on the other hand, am the hero who is going to save Arendelle from destruction.

**Anna:** You won't get away with this.

**Hans:** Oh, I already have.

**Anna:** Please, somebody help. Please, please!

**The Ministers:** It's getting colder by the minute. If we don't do something soon, we'll all freeze to death. Prince Hans...

**Hans:** Princess Anna is ... dead.

**The Ministers:** What...? What happened to her?

**Hans:** She was killed by Queen Elsa.

**The Ministers:** Oh? Her own sister.

**Hans:** At least we got to say our marriage vows...before she died in my arms.

**The Ministers:** There can be no doubt now, Queen Elsa is a monster and we are all in grave danger. Prince Hans, Arendelle looks to you.

**Hans:** With a heavy heart, I charge Queen Elsa of Arendelle with treason and sentence her to death.

**The Guards:** Hurry up! She's dangerous. Move quickly and be careful. The door not open!

## Passage B

### I. Background information

#### The arrival of Universal Studios Hollywood (the theme park)

From the beginning, Universal had offered tours of its studio. After Carl Laemmle opened Universal City on March 14, 1915, he would later invite the general public to see all the action for an admission fee of just \$0.05, which also included a lunch box containing chicken inside. This original tour was discontinued in around 1930, due to the advent of sound films coming to Universal.

Shortly after Music Corporation of America took over Universal Pictures in 1962, accountants suggested a new tour in the studio commissary would increase profits. On July 15, 1964, the modern tour was established to include a series of dressing room walk-throughs, peeks at actual production, and later, staged events. This grew over the years into a full-blown theme park. The narrated tram tour still runs through the studio's active backlot, but the staged events, stunt demonstrations and high-tech rides overshadow the motion-picture production that once lured fans to Universal Studios Hollywood.

#### 好莱坞环球影城的到来（主题公园）

从一开始环球影业就提供了参观制片厂的游览。在 1915 年 3 月 14 日，卡尔·莱姆勒开启环球市之后，他随后邀请大众参观环球市所有的部分，只收取参观者 5 美分的管理费，并提供一个鸡肉便当做午餐。约 19 世纪 30 年代，有声电影的出现终止了这种最初的游览。

1962 年，美国音乐公司接手环球影业之后，会计师建议在制片厂内增加导览以增加利润。1964 年 7 月 15 日，建立了包括参观更衣化妆间、观察实际拍片过程，以及参与摄影棚录影的现代化导览模式，多年后逐渐演变成现在的主题乐园。伴有导游讲解的游园车之旅仍经常在拍摄作业的外景片场穿梭，但摄影棚表演、特技示范和高科技游乐设施取代了曾经让影迷向往的环球影城好莱坞的拍片技术。

### II. Text division

Para. A-B	A brief introduction of Universal Studios Hollywood.
Para. C-D	The descriptions of each item and its requirements in Upper and Lower Lot.
Para. E	Public transportation of Universal Studios Hollywood.
Para. F	The ending.

## Section Two

## Reading

### Guessing unknown words by word formation

#### (suffixes)

A suffix is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make another word and modify or change its part of speech. This is a list of the most common suffixes in English, together with their basic meanings and some examples. You can find more details or precision for each suffix in any good dictionary. Generally speaking, a suffix only changes its part of speech rather the meaning of a word.

Suffix		Meaning	Part of Speech	Examples
-an	<i>also</i> -ain	Person	Noun	American, historian
-ancy	<i>also</i> -ency	state, quality	Noun	importance, difference
-ant		Person	Noun	assistant, peasant
-dom		Domain	Noun	freedom, kingdom
-ent		Person	Noun	student, resident
-ee		person (passive)	Noun	employee, interviewee
-er	<i>also</i> -or	Person	Noun	driver, actor
-ess		person (female)	Noun	actress, waitress
-ese		person (nationality)	Noun	Chinese, Japanese
-eer	<i>also</i> -ster	Person	Noun	engineer, gangster
-hood		Status	Noun	childhood, boyhood
-ian		Person	Noun	musician, physician
-ion	<i>also</i> -sion, -tion,	state, action	noun	action, solution destruction, organization

	-ation, -ition			Edition
	-ism	Attitude	Noun	idealism, communism
	-ist	person (occupation)	Noun	socialist, dentist
	-ity	state, quality	Noun	reality, ability
	-ment	state, action	Noun	judgment, movement
	-ness	state, quality	Noun	happiness, kindness
	-ship	Status	Noun	friendship, leadership
	-th	action, quality	Noun	truth, wealth
	-en	Causative	Verb	soften, harden
	-ify	Causative	Verb	simplify, beautify
-ize	also -ise	Causative	Verb	popularize, realize
-able	also -ible	able to be	Adjective	comfortable, visible
-al	also -ial	Quality	Adjective	natural, musical
-ant	also -ent	Quality	Adjective	important, excellent
-ary	also -ory	Quality	Adjective	military, satisfactory
	-ful	having, giving	Adjective	beautiful, helpful
	-ish	belonging to having the character	Adjective	Turkish foolish, selfish
-ive	also -itive	Quality	Adjective	active, impressive
	-less	Without	Adjective	wireless, aimless

-ous	<i>also</i> -eous -ious	Quality	Adjective	dangerous, generous Delicious
-ly		Manner	Adverb	happily, strangely
-ward		Direction	Adverb	backward, upward
-wise		manner Viewpoint	Adverb	clockwise Otherwise

## Writing

### A letter

To write a **personal letter** or **business letter**, the following five items should be included:

**HEADING:** This is the date of the letter.

**SALUTATION:** This is the name of the person (recipient) you are sending the letter to.

**TEXT BODY:** This is the main content of the letter.

**COMPLIMENTARY CLOSE:** It is an expression used to say farewell, especially a word or phrase used to end a letter or message.

**SIGNATURE:** At the end of the letter, you should leave a depiction of someone's name.

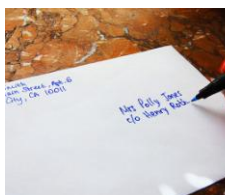
#### Steps taken to write a letter in English

**1. Write the date on the first line.** The date may help the reader keep track of the time frame for a response. The first line should contain the date you write the letter. The American style is "September, 10th, 2014" or "09/10/14". The British style is "10th September, 2014" or "10/09/14".

**2. Write the name of the recipient on the second line.** It should contain the name of the person who will be receiving the letter. How you write the name should depend on how he or she likes to be addressed. If it is a personal letter, you can probably skip titles for close friends and family members, but you might consider including them for government officials, military personnel, doctors, professors, or elderly people. But if you are writing a business letter, the formal address should be used. For instance, if you were addressing a letter to a CEO of a company, you might call him "Mr. Wang" or the head of his position.

**3. Write the body of the letter.** In this part, you should directly point out your purpose of sending the letter in the first paragraph. Then divide your paragraphs to different topics. In a personal letter, your words can be natural and easy, but the objective of a business letter is to get a specific point across to the recipient, so the language style should be clear, concise. You should use correct and professional words to your sharpness and clarity.

**4. Write the complimentary close.** How you write the complimentary close should depend on the relationship between you and the recipient. For example, if you send a personal letter to your relatives or close friends, you can write "yours", "with love", "yours affectionately", etc. But if you send a letter to a senior or organizations in a business letter, you should use formal close like "faithfully, yours" or "very sincerely, yours".





**5. Write the signature.** The handwritten or typed name or nickname will mark that a person writes on documents as a proof of identity. It should be put in the last line of the letter.

**6. Write the postscript or enclosure in the end.** If the business letter has postscript or enclosure, you should add it to the body. For example, you can put "P.S. Send the certificate back to me after you have a copy" or "P.S. If you need the book, please tell me" after the signature.

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 词义选择 (2)

一词多义是英语词汇中的常见现象，也是英语语言活力的体现。一个词语的意义通常包括字面意义 (literal meaning)、引申意义 (connotative meaning)、语境意义 (contextual meaning)、情感意义 (affective meaning) 和文体意义 (stylistic meaning) 等。故在翻译中，根据不同的语境和体裁，选择合适的词语意义非常重要。如：

- **cake and ale in life**, **cake** 是“生活中吃喝玩乐的事”的意思，而不是“蛋糕”的意思；
- **a stubborn boy**, **stubborn** 是“犟孩子”的意思，而在 **a stubborn resistance**, 则是“顽强抵抗”的意思；
- **birthday** 一词在口语中是“生日”的意思，而在书面语和正式场合中则用“诞辰”来表达其意思。

由此可见，词语的引申意义、情感意义和文体意义在英语中十分普遍。在翻译时，应考虑词语的这些意义从而选择恰当的词义。

#### 1. 词语的引申意义 (connotative meaning)

词语的引申意义是指词语的词意由字典上解释出的字面意义向其他更广泛的意义发展的过程。如：**book** 一词作名词时，通常是“书，书籍”的意思；但可引申为“书的章节、书卷、名册、注册簿、电话簿、歌词”等意思，大写时还可专门指代“《圣经》”。

如：**carrier** 作名词时，通常是“搬运人、运输工”等意思；但可引申为“货运公司、承载器、载体（化学）、托架（机械）、载波（通讯技术）、航空母舰（军事）、带菌者（医学）”等意思。遇到这种情况，如果还是千篇一律的用字面意义进行翻译，常常就会译错、译得不得体、译得不准确、译得不地道或译得乏味。因此在翻译中，我们可以根据上下文之间的语境来选择和判断词语的引申意义。如：

#### **book**

I found an interesting *book* in the library.

我在图书馆发现了一本有趣的书。（字面意义）

That's all I remember, sir, on the *Book*.

凭《圣经》起誓，长官，我记得的就是这些。（引申意义）

How many names are there on your *books*?

你的名册上共有多少人？（引申意义）

The music was fine, but the *book* was very poor.

音乐是出色的，但是歌词很糟。（引申意义）

#### **power**

Basically, all *power* is with the people.

从根本上说，一切权利属于人民。（字面意义）

I will do everything within my *power* to help you.

我愿意尽我所能来帮助你。(引申意义)

Political power grows out of the barrel of a gun.

枪杆子里面出政权。(引申意义)

China has a few nuclear weapons, but it will never join the so-called club of nuclear powers.

中国有一些核武器,但绝不参加所谓的核大国俱乐部。(引申意义)

## 2. 词语的情感意义 (affective meaning)

词语的情感意义或情感色彩是指词语的词意由人们对人、事、物的爱憎是非态度或情感倾向来决定。词语的情感意义包括三种:褒义 (positive)、中性 (neutral) 和贬义 (derogatory)。如: **ambition** 一词,如果用于不同的语境,就有可能出现褒义、中性和贬义三种不同的意义,分别为“雄心(褒义)”、“愿望(中性)”和“野心(贬义)”。

如: **deeds** 一词,上下文不一样,也会出现三种不同的情感意义,分别为“善事(褒义)”、“行动(中性)”和“勾当(贬义)”。因此在翻译中,必须依据上下文才能做到恰当地选择词语的情感意义,从而达到准确的翻译。如:

### story

The story of the hero is extremely moving.

英雄的事迹是极为动人的。(褒义)

I shall tell you a story about four little rabbits.

我将给你讲一个关于四只小兔子的故事。(中性)

What a story! I don't believe a word of it.

弥天大谎!我一个字都不信。(贬义)

### deep

He is a deep scholar in the field of cognitive linguistics.

他在认知语言学领域是一个造诣很深的学者。(褒义)

John dug a deep hole in the center of the garden.

约翰在花园中间挖了一个深洞。(中性)

He was found to have a deep dealing in drug.

有人发现他卷入不正当的毒品交易。(贬义)

## 3. 词语的文体意义 (stylistic meaning)

词语的文体意义是指由于文章体裁或语言使用场合的不同,词语的意义随着发生变化,产生书面语与口语意义或普通用语与公文用语意义的差异。如: **mother** 在口语中是“妈妈”的意思,在书面语中则用“母亲”表达; **morning** 一词在口语中是“早上”的意思,在书面语中则用“清晨”表达; **dead** 一词在口语中是“死”的意思,在书面语中则常用“逝世”; **now** 一词在普通用语中是“现在”的意思,在公文用语中则用“兹”表达; **arrange** 一词在普通用语中是“安排”的意思,在公文用语中则用“部署”表达; **give** 一词在普通用语中是“给”的意思,在公文用语中则用“给予、赠予”表达。因此,体裁和文体的不同能够决定词语的不同文体意义。在翻译时,应注意不同的文体,应选择词语的不同文体意义来表达。

There is no help for it.

没法子。(口语)

无可奈何。(书面)

There is nothing surprising about this.

这件事没什么可大惊小怪的。(口语)

此事不足为奇。(书面)

It is a true saying that time and tide wait for no man.

时间不等人，这话一点也不假。（口语）

时不我待，确是至理名言。（书面）

It was just the *time* of the Mid-Autumn Festival.

那正是中秋的时候。（口语）

时值中秋佳节。（书面）

To think of *you* makes me old.

因为想念你，我变老了。（口语）

思君催人老。（书面）

## Section Three

### How to select magazines online

**1. Log in.** If this is your first time preparing to order a fashion magazine online, take some time to surf some fashion websites and get to know the basic information about the fashion magazines. The famous fashion magazines include ELLE, Haper's Bazzar, VOGUE, GQ, Esquire etc. You may log in these websites of fashion magazines one by one and pay particular attention to sections that interest you.

**2. Browse and compare the category.** When you know some basic information about fashion magazines, you should begin to browse the different categories of fashion magazines as many as possible. You may also compare the different types, such as fashion magazines for clothes and for hairstyles. Find out the similarities and differences between each category and get more useful information.

**3. Locate the specific category.** After browsing so many different types of fashion magazines, you may consider what are your real needs and interests. Which parts do you want to notice and pay attention to? The clothes, beauty, shoes or hairstyles? Always remember your purpose and you may locate the specific fashion magazines according to your knowledge about the fashion and your real purpose.

**4. Pay the bills online.** When you pay your bills online, you should notice the following tips. You should never reveal your password to anybody, not even to the administrator of the payment system you are using. You should avoid paying online directly with your credit card (if possible), using a trusted third party payment processor like Alipay. You should also remember that don't keep thousands of dollars on the credit card used for online payments. If something bad happens you won't lose much money.

**5. Go and get the magazines in your selection.** Choose your favorite delivery ways and express companies. Make sure you have already offered the correct detailed address and contact information. Please keep your phone on during the delivery time.

---

## • Suggested Versions

### Passage A

娱乐传奇

邵逸夫这个名字对大众来说并不陌生。他是香港娱乐行业的巨头，亚洲娱乐产业最具影响力的人物之一。他创立了邵氏兄弟有限公司和香港无线电视有限公司，是电影电视业的传奇。

邵先生将他的雄心壮志都付诸于实践。1957年，他建立了邵氏影城——香港最大的电影制作公司。1967年，他合资成立香港无线电视有限公司（TVB），第一个无线电视广播站，并成长为市值上亿美元的电视帝国。数年来，邵先生向香港、大陆和西方国家的教育机构捐款上亿港元。

### 电影城

香港电影产业持续了十多年的繁荣与辉煌，但邵氏公司不在其列。邵先生 50 多岁才从东南亚定居香港，并创立邵氏兄弟有限公司。该公司招揽当红影星，并采用委托代理制度。然而，邵氏电影事业持续下滑。他的市场份额从全盛时期的 60% 缩减至 10%。80 年代中期，其电影产业大打折扣，仅每隔几年偶尔推出几部电影。

### 电视帝国

尽管邵先生错误地判断了香港电影最后的黄金时代，但他却成功地预见香港电视产业的黎明。随着 70 年代末、80 年代初，邵先生在电影产业的影响减弱，他不断增加对香港无线电视有限公司的投资。最终，他成为最大的股东并将 TVB 经营成为世界上最大的私营华语电视连续剧制造商。

与电影市场不同，邵氏电视在香港的地位从未受到威胁。近几十年来，其电视帝国打造的巨星远超过华语电影行业。许多巨星，如周润发、刘德华、梁朝伟、周星驰均从 TVB 演员训练班毕业。张曼玉、张国荣、张学友也从 TVB 举办的选美比赛或歌唱比赛中脱颖而出。TVB 成为华语世界唯一的明星制造机。

### 慈善事业

邵先生对生意的严厉方式与他对待慈善事业的方式形成鲜明的对比。1973 年，他成立了以教育为重心的慈善基金。他说：“中国仍然贫穷，需要大量资金发展教育。”超过 5000 幢冠以邵先生中文名“逸夫”的大楼矗立在大学校园里。如今，学生们已对“逸夫楼”习以为常，并认为这就是教学楼的统称。邵先生对教育事业的捐助不仅仅局限在中国大陆地区，也遍布全港和西方世界。哈佛大学、斯坦福大学、麻省理工学院和牛津大学均从中受益。

作为一名享誉全球的慈善家，邵先生将 65 亿港元投入到慈善事业中。世界各地一代又一代的读书人均是邵先生慈善事业的受益者。

## Passage B

### 好莱坞环球影城

好莱坞环球影城是一个电影制片厂及主题乐园，位于美国加州洛杉矶。它是历史最悠久、名气最大且仍在运营的好莱坞电影制片厂之一。其官方的行销标题是“洛杉矶娱乐之都”，然

而在暑期则经常以“洛杉矶最酷的地方”作为广告标语。起初是为了提供游客参观真正的环球影城摄影棚和场景而设立。

好莱坞环球影城分为两个区域，称为上园区和下园区,景点如下:

#### 上园区

项目	图片	开放年	简介	游园须知
神偷奶爸：小小兵恶作剧		2014 年 4 月 10 日	穿越小小兵训练设施的奇幻旅程，适合全家体验。加入格鲁和他的女儿们进行一次温馨而热闹的 3D 旅行	40 英寸以上者方可乘坐，40-48 英寸的儿童须有成年人监护
影城之旅		1964 年 7 月 15 日	公园的特色游乐项目。40-60 分钟车程到达环球电影制片厂外景	无身高要求，但强烈建议孩童须有监护人监护
怪物史瑞克 4D 动感电影		2003 年 5 月 23 日	史瑞克 4D 动感奇幻电影，适合全家体验。让你体验到头发竖立与眼球欲炸的惊险	婴儿不宜参加
辛普森虚拟过山车		2008 年 5 月 19 日	穿越春田村的奇幻之旅，适合全家体验	40 英寸以上者方可乘坐

#### 下园区

项目	图片	开放年	简介	游园须知
侏罗纪公园：激流勇进		1996 年 6 月 21 日	公园内唯一的水上项目，每船可载 25 人，似乎与活生生的恐龙面对面	42 英寸以上者方可乘坐
木乃伊复仇过山车		2004 年 6 月 25 日	2 分钟室内项目，钢辊转动的雪橇车，速度为每小时 45 英里。有严重疾病的客人不建议乘坐	48 英寸以上乘客者方可乘坐
变形金刚 3D 过山车		2012 年 5 月 24 日	4 分 30 秒的黑暗骑士 3K-4D 投影技术。每车最多乘坐 12 人	40 英寸以上者方可乘坐，40-48 英寸的儿童须有成年人监护



好莱坞环球影城附近公共交通便利，乘坐地铁红线即可到达。乘客还可以乘坐地铁巴士到达主题公园入口处。

用一天时间就可以在一个地方找到内容丰富有趣的娱乐项目，为最精彩的好莱坞体验做好准备吧！

## • Suggested Keys and Scripts

### **Get Started**

1. T      2. F

### **Reading for Meaning**

**Task 1**      1. B      2. D      3. C      4. D      5. C

**Task 2**      1. T      2. F      3. F      4. F      5. T

#### **Task 3**

**1. Movie:** assistant director 副导演,助理导演, production manager 制片人, scriptwriter 编剧, screenplay 剧本, recording 录音, sound effects 音响效果, dubbing 配音, dialogue 对白, subtitle 字幕, studio 摄影棚, box-office 票房, cast 演员阵容, film / movie star 电影明星, leading role 主角, supporting role 配角, guest actor/actress 客串演员。

**2. Television:** television program /television show 电视节目, season 季(部), episode 集, prime-time 黄金时段, trailer 预告片, soap opera 肥皂剧, TV drama 电视剧, character 角色, plot 情节, crew 工作人员, wireless television 无线电视, satellite television 卫星电视, live 直播, recorded 录制。

### **Reading for Language**

**Task 4**    1. influential    2. donation    3. misjudgment    4. charitarian    5. launched  
6. investment    7. was established    8. to decline    9. challenge    10. entertainment

**Task 5**    1. put... dream to    2. go downhill    3. has towered over  
4. in sharp contrast to    5. with the emphasis on

**Task 6**    1. as interesting as    2. so carefully as    3. much better    4. fewer  
5. larger    6. most popular    7. the sweetest    8. the most widely  
9. brighter and brighter    10. more and more fluent

### **Reading for Comprehension**

**Task 1**    1. most famous    2. family friendly    3. May 19, 2008  
4. water ride    5. Metro Red Line

**Task 2**    1. movie studio    2. Upper, Lower    3. Studio Tour  
4. *Transformers: The Ride*    5. metro bus

### **Listening & Speaking**

**Task 1**      1. C    2. A    3. D    4. D    5. B

#### **Scripts**

1. M. I don't watch much television now. Most of the programs are terrible.  
W. Neither do I. Like most adults, I'm too busy after work.  
Q. Who watches much television?
2. W. Let's move ahead and try to find a seat near the stage.  
M. Listen, it will be lucky to find a place to be standing in this cinema.  
Q. What can we know from the man?
3. W. I heard Mary had been back from the audition this morning. How did it go?  
M. If she had felt a bit relaxed, she would have done it better.  
Q. What can we learn about Mary?
4. W. I'll ask John if he wants to go to the cinema with me tonight.  
M. What about me?  
Q. What does the man mean?
5. M. How did the movie end?  
W. I don't know. It'll be continued tonight.

Q. What can be inferred according to the woman?

**Task 2** 1. Dreamtime 2. couple 3. 30% 4. only one 5. April 30 6. Minibus

### Scripts

A: Good afternoon, Dreamtime Cinema. Can I help you?

B: Oh, I'm interested in the discounts you offer about the movie tickets.

A: Yes. We operate three types of discounts about the tickets, family ticket, couple ticket and student ticket. Which type do you want?

B: Well, I would like to get some information about the couple ticket.

A: Ok. It includes 10 tickets with 30% off.

B: Good, are they valid all the time?

A: Only one year.

B: All right.

A: The sooner, the better. This type of ticket can be available before April 30.

B: But how can I get to your cinema?

A: By Minibus No. 15. You can't miss it.

B: Thanks, I see.

**Task 3** Question 1. What is the name of the event?

Question 2. What is the topic about?/ Could you tell me the topic of the event?

Question 3. Who will be qualified to participate in the event?/Who will participate in the event?

Answer1. In Sun Peaks Resort, Canada.

Answer2. Sun Peaks Resort.

Answer3. On January 10, 2014.

### Scripts

Question1: Do you know where this event will take place?

Question 2: Do you know the sponsor of this event?

Question3: Could you tell me when the event will begin?



#### Task 4

Enjoy your time

## English Song

Let It Go  
(让爱随缘)

The snow glows white on the mountain tonight  
Not a footprint to be seen  
A kingdom of isolation  
And it looks like I'm the queen  
The wind is howling like this swirling storm inside  
Couldn't keep it in, heaven knows I tried

Don't let them in, don't let them see  
Be the good girl you always have to be  
Conceal, don't feel, don't let them know  
Well, now they know

Let it go, let it go  
Can't hold you back anymore  
Let it go, let it go  
Turn away and slam the door  
I don't care what they're going to say  
Let the storm rage on  
The cold never bothered me anyway

It's funny how some distance makes everything seem small  
And the fears that once controlled me can't get to me at all  
It's time to see what I can do to test the limits and break through  
No right, no wrong, no rules for me...I'm free

Let it go, let it go  
I am one with the wind and sky  
Let it go, let it go  
You'll never see me cry  
Here I stand, and here I'll stay  
Let the storm rage on

My power flurries through the air into the ground  
My soul is spiraling in frozen fractals all around  
And one thought crystallizes like an icy blast  
I'm never going back, the past is in the past

Let it go, let it go  
 And I'll rise like the break of dawn  
 Let it go, let it go  
 That perfect girl is gone  
 Here I stand in the light of day  
 Let the storm rage on  
 The cold never bothered me anyway

**Task 5** a.宽恕者 b. 普及 c. 无子女的 d. 不可思议地

**Task 6**

1. ment	n.	部门
2. ful	a.	感激的
3. ize	v.	实现
4. less	a.	无目的的
5. ly	ad.	真诚地
6. able	a.	能适应的
7. ify	v	变美丽
8. en	v.	加强
9. al	a.	基本的
10.hood	n.	谎言

**Task 7**

1. It is the 32nd animated feature in Walt Disney's classics series.
2. The story took place in a kingdom of lions in Africa.
3. It tells a young lion Simba who was to succeed his father as king.
4. However, after Simba's uncle murdered his father, Simba was feeling despaired.
5. Finally, Simba regained confidence and returned to challenge his uncle.

**Task 8**

1.

March 20, 2014

Dear Mary,

I hope you won't have any plans in this weekend, because I will spend my 20th birthday on this Saturday. I'm going to have a birthday party in my New Jersey's home, hope I will see you at the day.

I hope nothing will prevent you from coming as I'm looking forward to your visit.

Yours  
faithfully,  
Michael

2.

Mr. Wu  
CEO  
UME International Studio  
April 2, 2014

Dear Mr. Wu,

I am writing to enquire whether you would be willing to establish business relations with us. We are one of the international studios in Chongqing. We hope a large number of activities would be carried out to boost the box office this season.

I am looking forward to carrying out cooperation with your company.

Your early reply will be appreciated.

Yours Sincerely,

Lily

Marketing Manager  
Cross International Studio

**Task 9** 1. 接近/方法 2. 电影/照片, 画面 3. 记录/录制 4. 追溯/获得 5. 居住/现场

**Task10** 1. 尽管邵先生错误地判断了香港电影最后的黄金时代, 但他却成功地预见了香港电视产业的黎明。  
2. 邵先生对教育事业的捐助不仅仅局限在中国大陆地区, 也遍布全港和西方世界。  
3. 好莱坞环球影城是一个电影制片厂及主题乐园, 位于美国加州洛杉矶。  
4. 其官方的行销标题是“洛杉矶娱乐之都”, 然而在暑期则经常以“洛杉矶最酷的地方”作为广告标语。  
5. 他说: “中国仍然贫穷, 需要大量资金发展教育”。超过 5000 幢冠以邵先生中文名“逸夫”的大楼矗立在大学校园里。如今, 学生们已对“逸夫楼”习以为常, 并认为这就是教学楼的统称。

## Workshop

### Task 1

Picture 1. periodicals

Picture 2. magazines

Picture 3. payment

Picture 4. press

### Task 2

1. Log in the target website.
2. Browse the information of leisure magazines.
3. Compare the different types.

4. Locate your favorites.
5. Get the magazines in your selection.



高等教育出版社

# Unit Three

## Sports Lovers

### ● Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Phrases</b>	remarkable, coordination, stunt, accelerate, moderate, reduce, cooperate, accomplishment, knowledgeable, pursue			
	have a positive effect on, resistant to, participate in, commitment to, take...pride in			
	Pronouns and Numerals			
<b>Skills</b>	1. Listening & Speaking	2. Reading	3. Writing	4. Translation
	Fun sports	Topic sentence (1)	A business card	Extended meaning
<b>Workshops</b>	1. Talking about how to do different kinds of sports		2. Talking about the efficient ways of losing weight	

#### Section One

#### Passage A

#### I. Background information



**Fun Sports** — It is an educational philosophy originated in Germany and Japan after World War II. It means that people can get the happiness from participation and understanding of sports. The theory of Fun Sports has been applied in physical education.

As a new educational method, Fun Sports aims to cultivate people's health and personality education. Since the mid-1980s, with the development of economy, Chinese schools have adopted the idea of Fun Sports. Today, The Chinese physical educators are fully aware of the importance of "learning from fun".

“快乐体育”是一种教育理念，起源于二战后的德国和日本。意指人们在参与和理解运动中得到乐趣。“快乐体育”的理念已被运用到体育教育中，成为一种以培养健全身体教育和人格教育为目标的新的教育方法。受德、日两国“快乐体育”思想的影响，自上世纪 80 年代中期以来，伴随经济的发展，我国的学校已采纳了“快乐体育”教育思想。如今，我国体育教育工作者也充分认识到“寓教于乐”的重要性。

## II. Outline

Para. 1	The introductory remarks.		
Para. 2-4	The benefits of doing sports	Para. 2	One's shape and physical health.
		Para. 3	The cultivation of comprehensive social skills.
		Para. 4	The cultivation of one's self-confidence.
Para. 5	The Conclusion.		

## III. Detailed study of Passage A

**1. remarkable a.** unusual or surprising in a way that causes people to take notice 显著的，引人注目的

**Synonyms** outstanding, noticeable

**e.g.**

They can also affect us in remarkable ways in our lives.

它也同样显著地影响着我们的生活。

The boy shows remarkable ability at mathematics.

这个男孩显示出非凡的数学才能。

**remark n.** 注意

**remarkably ad.** 显著地

**2. have a positive effect on** to have a good influence on 对……有积极的影响

**e.g.**

They teach us about competition and how to be good team players, which will have a positive effect on our physical and mental health.

体育教会我们如何竞争，如何成为团队中优秀的队员，对我们的身心健康非常有益。

These developments will have a positive effect on the stability of our financial market.

这些发展对稳定目前金融市场会产生正面的作用。

**3. coordination n.** the skillful and effective interaction of movements 协调

**e.g.**

Sports provide an opportunity for us to develop our bones, hearts and lung functions, improving physical skills and coordination.

运动让我们强健骨骼，改善心肺功能，并提高自身的运动技能和协调能力。

The perfect coordination of the dancers and singers added a charm to the performance.

舞蹈演员和歌手们配合得很好，使演出更具魅力。

**coordinate v.** 调整, 协调

**coordinated a.** 协调的 coordination will be influenced and will slow down.

4. The third sentence of Paragraph 2 "Children's physical skills development and hand-eye coordination may get stunted if they do not exercise in critical growth stages." can be paraphrased as follows:

If children don't get enough exercise during their growth, the development of their physical skills and hand-eye

5. **stunt v.** to prevent sb/sth from growing or developing as much as they/it could 阻碍  
**e.g.**

Children's physical skills development and hand-eye coordination may get stunted.

他们的运动技能发育和眼手协调能力的形成将会受到阻碍。

His illness didn't stunt his creativity.

疾病没有扼杀他的创造力。

6. **accelerate v.** to cause to go faster 加速

**e.g.**

The accelerated pulse caused by moderate exercise can increase muscle strength.

适当的运动能够加速脉搏跳动, 可以增强肌肉特别是心肌的力量。

The new construction projects are being accelerated now.

这些新的项目正在加快进行。

7. **moderate a.** neither large nor small in amount or degree 适中的

**e.g.**

While a moderate amount of stress can be beneficial, too much stress can exhaust you.

适当的压力可能有益, 而压力过大会让你精疲力竭。

Moderate exercise will benefit you.

适当的运动对你有益处。

**moderation n.** 适度

**moderately ad.** 适中地

8. **reduce v.** to make sth. less or smaller in size, quantity, price, etc. 减少; 使变弱

**e.g.**

Costs have been reduced over the past year.

过去一年, 各项费用已经减少了。

Giving up smoking reduces the risk of heart disease.

戒烟会减少得心脏病的危险。

**reduction n.** 减少

9. **resistant to** opposing sth and trying to stop it happening 对.....有抵抗力的

**e.g.**

By doing sports, we can keep fit, making us more resistant to colds and injuries.

参加体育锻炼能让人保持健康, 使人们更能抵抗感冒和避免受伤。

Many pests are resistant to the insecticide.

许多害虫对这种杀虫剂有抵抗力。

**resist v.** 抵抗

**resistance n.** 抵抗

10. **participate in** to take part in or become involved in 参与

**e.g.**

Participating in sports lets people cooperate with each other.

参加体育运动能促使人们互相合作。



They are expecting to participate in the ceremony.

他们希望参加这次典礼。

**participant a.** 参与的

**participation n.** 参与

**11. cooperate with** to work together towards a shared aim 合作

**e.g.**

He agreed to cooperate with the police to investigate.

他同意配合警方调查。

The workers, in cooperation with the managers, have increased output by 10 per cent.

工人们与管理人员合作已使产品增加了 10%。

**cooperative a.** 协作的

**cooperation n.** 合作

**12. Commitment to** the willingness to work hard and give your energy an time to a job or an activity 投入, 承诺

**e.g.**

Commitment to some sports leads us to reach out to others with common interests.

参与某种运动常常会使人因为一个共同的兴趣而彼此接触。

I admire his lifelong commitment to charities.

我钦佩他终身投入慈善事业。

**13.** The third sentence of Paragraph 3 “Commitment to some sports leads us to reach out to others with common interests.” can be paraphrased as follows:

Getting involved in sports can provide us with the opportunity to know others who have the same interests as ours.

**14.** The second sentence of Paragraph 4 “Exercise in general helps us develop a healthy self-image, as we take pride in our physical accomplishments.” can be paraphrased as follows:

Generally speaking, taking exercise can make us keep fit and we are very proud of our accomplishments gained in physical training.

**15. take pride in** to be proud of 以...为骄傲

**e.g.**

Exercise in general helps us develop a healthy self-image, as we take pride in our physical accomplishments.

通常体育帮助我们建立起健康的个人形象, 使人们为自己锻炼的效果感到自豪。

We take pride in our responsibilities as teachers in new China.

作为新中国的教师, 我们为自己的职责感到骄傲。

**16. accomplishment n.** an impressive thing that is done after a lot of work 成就

**Synonyms** achievement, fulfillment

**e.g.**

It was the President's greatest accomplishment.

这是总统最伟大的成就。

For a novelist, that's a great accomplishment.

对于一个小说家来说, 那是一个了不起的成就。

**accomplish v.** 完成

**accomplished a.** 完成的, 熟练的

**17. knowledgeable a.** knowing a lot 有知识的, 有见解的

**e.g.**

If you have an interest and a desire to become more knowledgeable or capable in sports, pursue them.

如果你对体育运动有兴趣，并希望获得更多体育知识，更加擅长运动，就去追寻梦想吧！

She is very knowledgeable about plant research.

她对植物研究很在行。

**knowledge n.** 知识

**18. pursue v.** to do sth or try to achieve sth over a period of time 追求，致力于

**Synonyms** seek, chase

**e.g.**

She wishes to pursue a medical career.

她希望从事医学工作。

We intend to pursue this policy with determination.

我们准备坚决贯彻这项政策。

**pursuer n.** 追赶者，追寻者

**pursuit n.** 追求，寻找

## ***Get Relaxed***

## **Scripts**



## **Never Give up**

Dear hard work, I used to hate you.

When you called my name, I hurried ran away from you.

When I knew you're coming, I used to hide from you.

When you enforced others to talk to me, I quickly made excuses to get away from you.

I'm afraid of the pain, because I didn't want to get hurt.

I'm afraid to fail, so I didn't even try.

And I'm afraid of your name, because what you've done to others.

Who do you think you are? Making me so afraid of who you are.

Reflection in the mirror, shadow behind me.

I take one step and you are still ahead of me.

Sweat in my face, tears in my eyes. I keep on going. I heard that you never tell a lie.

You turned the quarter rich. Is there anything that you can't do?

Now look at me, you made me who I am today.

Because of you, I have this never losing, never giving up attitude.

Quitting? That's not in my vocabulary.

When they quit, I keep going. When they sleep, I work harder.

When they say that I can't, they count me out. I showed them that I can.

When I told them about my dreams and they laughed, I make sure I laughed last.

I'm a dream chaser. That means I chase my dreams, no one else's.

Only I can defeat me. It's me against the work put on me.

There's no losing, I will not lose.

I came this far, and I'm not stopping now.

I needed to take a second.  
 And I wanna do apologies to anybody that I might let down last night.  
 This is kind of hard to understate any word.  
 Sometimes you can try so hard on something.  
 Sometimes you can resolve, so prepared. You still failed.  
 Every time you fail, it's painful, cause it's sadness.  
 Especially as I saw last night, it causes disappointment.  
 I've often said that a man's character is not judged after he celebrates his victory but by what he does when he's back against the wall.  
 So no matter how great the setback, how severe the failure, you never give up.  
 You never give up. You pick yourself up. You brush yourself up.  
 You push forward. You move on. You adapt. You overcome. That's what I'm blame.

## Passage B

### I. Background information

**The Winter Olympic Games** is a major international sporting event that occurs once every four years. Unlike the Summer Olympics, sports items of Winter Olympics are practiced on snow and ice. The first Winter Olympics, the 1924 Winter Olympics, was held in Chamonix, France. The original 5 sports were bobsleigh, curling, ice hockey, Nordic skiing, and skating. The Games were held every four years from 1924 until 1936, after which they were interrupted by World War II. The Olympics resumed in 1948 and was again held every four years. In 1992, the Winter Olympic Games and Summer Olympic Games were held in the same years.

冬季奥运会是四年举行一次的大型国际体育赛事。与夏季奥运会不同的是，冬季奥运会的运动项目是在雪冰中进行。第一届冬季奥运会是在 1924 年法国霞慕尼举行，最初的 5 项比赛项目是雪橇、冰壶、冰球、越野滑雪和滑冰。1924 到 1936 年间，冬奥会每四年举办一次，后来在第二次世界大战期间被中断。冬奥会于 1948 年恢复，之后又四年举行一次，在 1992 年，冬季和夏季奥运会在同一年内举行。

### II. Text division

Para. A	The introductory remarks		
Para. B-F	The features and requirements of each item held at the Winter Olympics	Para. B	Bobsled
		Para. C	Cross-country skiing
		Para. D	Curling
		Para. E	Snowboarding
		Para. F	Figure skating
Para. G	The ending		

## Section Two

### Reading

#### Recognizing the topic sentence (1)

A paragraph is composed of related sentences with a single topic, which states the main idea of the paragraph. It is usually stated in the first sentence or last sentence of the paragraph. By learning how to find out a topic sentence can we understand the essay more clearly and easily.

Examples:

The topic sentence appears at the beginning of the paragraph.

1. **The park is a pleasant place for everyone to exercise.** Little kids like to play on the swings and slides. Older children can play little league baseball or other team sports at the larger parks. Teenagers often play Frisbee on the grass or volleyball in the sand. Adults enjoy taking walks, some seniors like to sit on the park benches and feed the birds.

2. **Pollution has caused three major problems in the last decades.** First, farmers use chemical fertilizers(肥料) to increase production and insecticide(杀虫剂) to kill insects. When rain flows with these poisonous chemicals to rivers, water is polluted. Second, with the development of industry, more and more factories have been built and have sent out smoke and poisonous gases. Thus the air is polluted. The increasing number of cars also adds to the air pollution. A third form of pollution is noise. Very loud voice can make people sick even mad.

The topic sentence appears at the end of the paragraph.

1. Some people like to hide their weakness. He may pretend to show something good so others will like him. However, one who looks ugly may have a pleasant character. It is foolish to judge a person only by his appearance. **No one looks exactly the same as he really is.**

2. I like travel in many different areas. I think visiting places of historic interest can enrich our knowledge of history. In addition, while traveling, we can learn about many art forms and architecture different from our hometown. We can broaden our horizon(视野) during traveling. Finally, traveling may offer us an opportunity to get to know people who have different cultures, lives, customs, beliefs, etc. **Traveling can teach us a variety of knowledge, which is a kind of education.**

### Writing

#### A business card

##### Steps taken to write a Business Card in English

1. **Employment organization:** Name of the working place which is written on the upper left of the business card.

2. **Name:** Full name including given name, middle name and family name. Put it in the middle and use bold font to emphasize.

3. **Title/position:** A name that describes a job. Write it under the name.



用确切的汉语词句，将原文内容准确地表达出来。可以用联想、分析、判断、综合等方法进行翻译。

引申法的分类：

### 1. 抽象化引申

指对英文中意义明确的具体词语，采用汉语中抽象的、概况的词语表达出来。

The matter was finally settled **under the table**.

事情终于私下解决了。(原意“桌子底下”译为“私下解决了”。)

**“You chicken!”** he cried, looking at Tom with contempt.

你这胆小鬼！”他轻蔑的看着汤姆大叫道。(原意“小鸡”译为“胆小鬼”。)

The **fingerprint** of this painter is obvious in all his paintings.

这个画家的特色在他所有的画作中都很明显。(原意“指纹”译为“特色”。)

### 2. 具体化引申

指对英语中的抽象概念或表示属性的词语，采用汉语中具体的含义来表达。

The car in front of me stopped and I missed the **green**.

我前面那辆车突然停了下来，我错过了绿灯。(原意“绿色”译为“绿灯”。)

He is the **admiration** of the whole school.

他是全校师生都很钦佩的人。(原意“钦佩”译为“钦佩的人”。)

The **kettle** is boiling.

壶里的水开了。(原意“水壶”译为“壶里的水”。)

## Section Three

### How to do different kinds sports

**Picture 1. Treadmill** A treadmill is an exercise machine for running or walking while staying in one place. The machine provides a moving platform with a wide belt and an electric motor or a flywheel. The belt moves to the rear allowing a person to walk or run an equal, and necessarily opposite, speed. The rate at which the belt moves is the rate of walking or running. Thus, the speed of running may be controlled and measured.

**Picture 2. Dumbbell** Hold a dumbbell in each hand and stand with your feet as wide apart as your hips. Let your arms hang down at your sides with your palms forward. Pull your abdominals in, stand tall, and keep your knees slightly bent. Curl both arms upward until they're in front of your shoulders. Slowly lower the dumbbells back down.

**Picture 3. Bench Press** Begin by lying flat on the bench, with your body in a natural and relaxed position. Put your arms straight out to either side of you, and then bend your elbows, bringing your hands up to touch the bar. Begin with just the bar weight as a stretch before the heavy lifting. Rack the bar and add weight. Lift the bar up, slowly bring it down to just above your sternum, and explode upward for one rep. Rest according to how you feel between sets.

**Picture 4. Bike Trainer** Lay an exercise mat down in a flat, solid area. Place the bike trainer toward the back of the mat. Set the back wheel of your bicycle into the bike trainer. Tighten the clamp securely around the back axle. Set the resistance. Spin the wheel a few times with your hand to test the resistance. Make sure the tire does not rub, and has enough clearance from the floor. Step into the pedals of the bicycle and turn slowly to test the bike's stability and resistance. Make any final adjustments prior to working out on the



## • Suggested Versions

### Passage A

#### 快乐体育

体育以娱乐的形式让我们的身体得到锻炼，它也同样显著地影响着我们的生活。体育教会我们如何竞争，如何成为团队中优秀的队员，对我们的身心健康非常有益。

参加团队和个人体育锻炼有助于保持体形，预防重大疾病。运动让我们强健骨骼，改善心肺功能，并提高自身的运动技能和协调能力。如果孩子们在关键的生长期缺乏运动，他们的运动技能发育和眼手协调能力的形成将会受到阻碍。对于成年人，规律的体育活动有助于心脏的健康。适当的运动能够加速脉搏跳动，可以增强肌肉特别是心肌的力量，从而降低患病的风险。参加体育锻炼能让人保持健康，使人们更能抵抗感冒和避免受伤。

参加体育运动促使人们互相合作。在运动的过程中人们的综合社交能力如交流、分享以及理解能力都得到提高。参与某种运动常常会使人们因为一个共同的兴趣而彼此接触。我们可以成为团队的一份子，或是和其他体育迷一起参加到运动项目中。最后，团队意识的确立。这种意识会鼓励你更加努力地工作，因为你努力的结果会有利于自己和他人。置身在一个团队里可以让你学到如何为了共同的目标而与他人合作。在运动队里，孩子们常常可以交到很好的朋友并建立很好的关系。家庭运动能让家庭成员之间更加团结，在运动中，成年人可以为孩子树立健康锻炼的榜样。

参加体育运动树立了人们的自信，这是情感发展的重要部分。通常体育帮助我们建立起健康的个人形象，使人们为自己锻炼的效果感到自豪。参与体育活动能帮助人们在目标、运动精神、团队合作方面形成积极的人生态度。这些影响将扩展到球类运动之外，并融入到人们生活的其他方面。随着人们体质和能力的增强，自信度也会得到极大的提升。纽约大学研究中心的临床医师玛丽安·安格博士认为体育可以培养人们的领导能力、思辨能力、自律意识以及对他人的信任和尊重。另外，运动还可以帮助人们对自身有一个积极的认识。

如果你对体育运动有兴趣，并希望获得更多体育知识，更加擅长运动，就去追寻梦想吧！总而言之，运动可以让你在身体、社交和情感方面得到全方位的发展。愿你在体育中找到乐趣！

### Passage B

#### 冬季勇士

冬奥会像奥运会一样每四年举行一次。冬奥会运动员们的天赋各有不同，他们每天都会花数小时来训练自己擅长的运动所需要的力量和技能。你想成为冬奥会运动员吗？以下介绍几项冬奥会竞赛和竞技项目。

#### 雪橇

雪橇运动员们必须能够掌握迅速加速的技能，其中产生的强大动力可将运动员推到 164 英尺的高度（50 米），所以在比赛中，哪怕一毫秒都非常重要。运动员在赛道最高点所获得的速度将在赛道尽头转化为更快的滑行速度，也就是说，在顶部重力越大，到达底部的速



度越快。两人中坐在后面操作减速的运动员必须拥有高大健壮的身材，奥运训练中心的教练安布罗斯·塞拉诺如实说。

### 越野滑雪

越野滑雪运动员需要具有出色的耐力。越野滑雪的男子赛道长为 31 英里（50 公里），女子赛道为 18.6 英里（30 公里）。东田纳西州立大学从事体育研究的布拉德·德威斯教授说：这些运动员都要有非常好的有氧运动能力。这意味着他们可以在每分钟呼吸到大量的氧气，让他们的身体在长时间的运动中有充足的供氧。在实验测试中，越野滑雪运动员们拥有人类最好的有氧运动能力。

### 冰壶

冰壶被称为“冰上象棋”，但是冰壶运动员可不是不做运动的人。两个冰壶队的四名队员轮流将沉重的大溜石滑向目标区域。冰壶运动其中的一项基本策略是要知道什么时候开始擦刷冰面。冰壶运动员也许没有其他运动员一样有力量，但是他们却有着非常优美的体型。这项运动需要运动员具有很强的灵活性和长时间运动的耐力。当你看到一个冰壶运动员时，你可能不会立马认出这是一个顶级的运动员，但你一定会看出他是体育馆里最有型的。

### 单板滑雪

不同的竞赛对滑雪者的健康要求不同，但是腿部力量和身体的平衡性是对他们共同的要求。当跳跃者高速转弯时，腿上集聚的力量非常大，这就如同在他们背上放了一个巨大的杠铃。

### 花样滑冰

花样滑冰运动员必须满足以下所有要求：爆发性跳跃的力量、冰上跳舞的平衡性、完成长时间项目的耐力以及完美旋转的协调能力。一名出色的花样滑冰运动员一秒钟可以旋转 6 圈，一次可以旋转 70 圈左右。

你想成为一名冬季勇士吗？如果你拥有这些天赋，那就通过专业的训练成就你的梦想吧！希望我们下一届冬奥会再见。

---

## • Suggested Keys and Scripts

### ***Get Started***

1. F            2. T

### ***Reading for Meaning***

**Task 1**            1. C    2. B    3. B    4. D    5. C

**Task 2**            1. F   2. T   3. T   4. F   5. T

### **Task 3**

**1. Sports item:** basketball 篮球, soccer 足球, badminton 羽毛球, baseball 棒球, volley

ball 排球, weightlifting 举重, fencing 击剑, diving 跳水, gymnastics 体操, boxing 拳击。

**2. Sports event:** Winter Olympic Games 冬奥会, World Cup 世界杯, World Championship 世锦赛, National Basketball Association Game 美国篮球职业联赛, Marathon 马拉松。

**3. Sports team:** team member 队员, captain 队长, team uniform 队服, teamwork 团队合作, cheering squad 拉拉队。

## ***Reading for Language***

**Task 4** 1. remarkable 2.coordination 3.stunted 4. accelerated 5. to reduce  
6.moderate 7. accomplishment 8. cooperation 9. knowledgeable 10. pursuit

**Task 5** 1. has a positive effect on 2. resistant to 3. participated in  
4. commitment to 5.take...pride in

**Task 6** 1. Three fourths 2. three 3. eighty 4. one third 5. second  
6. any 7. these 8. which 9. each other 10. ourselves

## ***Reading for Comprehension***

**Task 1** 1. accelerate 2. take in 3. sweep 4.make turns 5.complete

**Task 2** 1. faster slide 2. oxygen 3. speed and power 4.barbell 5. endurance

## ***Listening &Speaking***

**Task 1** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C

### **Scripts:**

1. M. Are you good at sports, Linda?  
W. Are you kidding? I'm terrible! But I love to watch sports, and read sports magazines twice a week.  
Q. How often does Linda read sports magazines?
2. M. How much time do you spend in exercising a week?  
W. Well, I do aerobics three hours a week, and the other days I play badminton for two hours a week.  
Q. How many hours does the woman exercise a week?
3. W. Why don't you try to get some exercise? It is not difficult.  
M. Oh, I'm very lazy and I'm not willing to do anything.  
Q. Why doesn't the man want to do exercise?
4. W. Who is your favorite hero?  
M. Jesse Owens. I think he is the greatest. He is one of the first black American athletes to win gold, and his 8.06-meter long jump record remained unbeaten for 25 years.  
Q. What sport is Jesse Owens good at?
5. M. The most influential sports-men were chosen at the awards ceremony of the 60th anniversary for sports in China.  
W. My idol Yao Ming was elected too. He lets us know more about NBA and he's well deserving of it.

Q. What does the woman think of Yao Ming?

**Task 2** 1. 110m hurdles 2. Liu Xiang 3. third 4. stress 5. practice

**Scripts:**

W: What a pity! I had to go to a wedding party yesterday so I didn't watch the 110ms hurdles finals.

M: Well, undoubtedly, flying man Liu Xiang won.

W: Wow, it is the third gold medal he won in the national games.

M: Yes, he won the grand slam.

W: Did he slow down after clearing all hurdles?

M: No, his competitors like Shi Dongpeng gave him some stress.

W: Did he perform at the top of his condition?

M: I think not. He said he just took a conservative policy during the national games.

The game was more like a practice to him.

W: He never lets people down. We all know the return of the king!

M: Let's wait and see his better and better performance !

**Task 3 Keys:**

Question1: What is the sport item on Monday morning?

Question 2: What is the sport item on Thursday morning?

Question3: What is the sport item on Saturday morning?

Answer1: Kick boxing.

Answer2: On Wednesday morning and Saturday evening.

Answer 3: From 6:30 to 9:30 pm.

**Scripts:**

Question1: What is the sport item on Friday morning?

Question2: When will the gym have class of Latin aerobics?

Question3: What time will the gym have Hip Hop class on Tuesday?

**Task 4**

**Enjoy your time**

## English Song

**Survival (2012 伦敦奥运会主题曲)**

Race, life's a race  
And I am gonna win  
Yes, I am gonna win  
And I'll light the fuse

And I'll never lose  
And I choose to survive  
Whatever it takes  
You won't pull ahead  
I'll keep up the pace  
And I'll give you my strength  
To the whole human race  
Yes I am prepared  
To stay alive  
And I won't forgive, vengeance is mine  
And I won't give in  
Because I choose to thrive  
I'm gonna win  
Race, it's a race  
But I'm gonna win  
Yes I'm gonna win  
And will light the fuse  
I'll never lose  
And I choose to survive  
Whatever it takes  
You won't pull ahead  
I'll keep up the pace  
And I'll reveal my strength  
To the whole human race  
Yes I am the man  
Fight! Fight! Fight! Fight!  
Win! Win! Win! Win!

- Task 5**
1. My mother has passed along to me certain rules for getting along with others.
  2. Smoking can result in kinds of problems which are harmful to us.

- Task 6**
1. Colors have different meanings in different countries
  2. Our life today depends very much on energy
  3. No one can avoid being influenced by advertisements
  4. Exercise is beneficial to your heart
  5. Edelweiss has different symbolic meanings

- Task 7**
1. Yoga is not just a way of keeping fit.
  2. Doing exercise in the gym can help shape your figures, too.
  3. Yoga leads you to find inner peace.
  4. Yoga trainers are spiritual guides who are not simply teaching.
  5. They help your body and mind work harmoniously.

## Task 8

English Department of Foreign Language Institute, Binhai

**Peng Gao**  
**Professor / Dean**

**Address:** No.59 South Road, Binhai, 886072

**Mobile:** 136042856\*\*

**Fax:** 62-267-7360

**E-mail:** gp@mail.dlptt.in.cn

**Task 9** 1.B 2.B 3.B 4.A 5.A

## Task10

1. 体育教会我们如何竞争，如何成为团队中优秀的队员，对我们的身心健康非常有益。
2. 参加体育运动树立了人们的自信，这是情感发展的重要部分。
3. 运动员在赛道最高点所获得的速度将在赛道尽头转化为更快的滑行速度，也就是说，在顶部重力越大，到达底部的速度越快。
4. 在实验测试中，越野滑雪运动员们拥有人类最好的有氧运动能力。
5. 花样滑冰运动员必须满足以下所有要求：爆发性跳跃的力量、冰上跳舞的平衡性、完成长时间项目的耐力以及完美旋转的协调能力。一名出色的花样滑冰运动员一秒钟可以旋转 6 圈，一次可以旋转 70 圈左右。

## Workshop

### Task 1

Picture 1. back and forth

Picture 2. dumbbells

Picture 3. barbell

Picture 4. ride

### Task 2

1. Don't eat junk food. Instead, have high fiber foods like fruits and vegetables that will keep you satiated longer than other foods. Conversely, sugar and salt tend to increase your desire to eat.
2. Don't eat too much high calorie food like meats or milk.

3. Drink a lot of water. Aside from cutting out liquid calories from sugary drinks, water will help you feel full.

4. Have enough sleep. Sleep and stress management are important components of any fitness program. Poor sleep and heavy pressure will cause body to gain weight.

5. Don't exercise excessively. Around 5-6 hours per week will be enough to remain healthy and good- shaped.

Hope these tips will help Eric succeed in his fitness journey.



高等教育出版社

# Unit Four

## Art and Music Addicts

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	survive, inspire, perform, appreciate, fame, arise, connection, respond, imitate, glorious			
	be talented in, lay the foundation for, prefer to do... rather than do, follow the crowd, respond to			
	Articles and Conjunctions			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	Music and arts	Topic sentences (2)	An e-mail	Transferring part of speech (1)
<b>Workshops</b>	1.Talking about how to book tickets online		2.Talking about how to enjoy live concerts	

### Section One

#### Passage A

#### I. Background information



1. Isadora Duncan—Angela Isadora Duncan (May 27, 1877 – September 14, 1927) was an American dancer, the innovator of modern dance. Born in California, she lived in Western Europe and the Soviet Union from the age of 22 until her death at age 50.



Duncan said, "Nature is the source of the dance." She frequently danced barefoot at garden parties wearing white long white tunics. The kind of dancing Isadora wanted to do was new and different from other dances at the time. Duncan does not like ballet. She said that ballet dancers had too many rules to follow. She said ballet was "ugly and against nature." She wanted her "modern" dance style to be free and natural.

安吉拉·伊莎多拉·邓肯，美国舞蹈家，现代舞的创始人。出生于加利福尼亚州旧金山，从 22 岁到 50 岁去世一直居住在西欧和前苏联。

邓肯认为人所做的舞蹈动作都存在于自然界之中。她常常穿着轻质宽松的白色裙袍，赤脚在花园的聚会上跳舞。这种舞蹈完全有别于当时其他的舞蹈。她不喜欢芭蕾，认为芭蕾舞要遵循的规矩太多。她高呼“芭蕾一点也不美”，因为她所追求的是一种开放、自由的舞蹈动作。



**2. Modern dance**—Born in the early 20th century, modern dance is a dance style that centers on a dancer's own interpretations instead of structured steps, as in traditional ballet dancing. Modern dancers reject the limitations of classical ballet and favor movements derived from the expression of their inner feelings. During the 1900's, European dancers began rebelling against the rigid rules of classical ballet. Turning against the structured techniques, costumes and shoes of ballet, these dancers favored a more relaxed, free style of dancing.

现代舞（Modern Dance），是 20 世纪初在西方兴起的一种与古典芭蕾相对的舞蹈派别。它强调舞者对舞蹈自己的诠释，这不同于传统的芭蕾舞要求固定的舞蹈动作。其主要美学观点是反对古典芭蕾的因循守旧，单纯追求技巧的形式主义倾向，崇尚用舞蹈来表现内心的情感。在 20 世纪初，欧洲的一些舞蹈家们主张摆脱古典芭蕾舞过于僵化的动作程式的束缚，脱掉芭蕾舞的服装和舞鞋，以合乎自然运动法则的舞蹈动作，自由地抒发人的真实情感。



**3. Ballet** — a type of performance dance that originated in the Italian Renaissance courts of the 15th century and later developed into a concert dance form in France and Russia. It has since become a widespread, highly technical form of dance with its own vocabulary. It has been globally influential and has defined the foundational techniques used in many other dance genres. Ballet requires years of training to learn and master, and much practice to retain proficiency.

芭蕾舞（Ballet），是 15 世纪意大利文艺复兴时期的皇家宫廷里兴起的一种舞蹈表演形式。后来在法国和俄国演变成音乐剧舞蹈。从那以后广为流传，成为一种高难度的舞蹈形式，并且形成了一套完整的动作和体系。它的影响遍布全球并奠定了其它舞蹈类别的动作基础。芭蕾舞者要经过多年的学习和训练才能掌握和拥有纯熟的舞蹈技艺。

#### 4. Types of dance



**Latin dance** is a fast-paced, often sensual, partner dance characterized by sexy hip movements. However, hip movements are not intentional in any of the Latin dances. The hip motion is a natural consequence of changing weight from one foot to the other.

拉丁舞，是快节奏，充满浪漫情调，以胯部向两侧的扭动来调节步伐的舞蹈。在任何一种拉丁舞中，扭胯都不是故意而为，只是表演者随着身体重心在双脚之间的转移而产生的自然而然的舞蹈动作。



**Jazz** is a fun dance style that relies heavily on originality and improvisation. Many jazz dancers mix different styles into their dancing, incorporating their own expression. Jazz dancing often uses bold, dramatic body movements, including body isolations and contractions.

爵士舞，是一种极富趣味的舞蹈，强调原创性和即兴发挥。许多爵士舞者把其他的舞蹈动作揉和其中，直接把内心的感受表达出来。爵士舞的动作大胆，具有表现性，奔放自如。



**Tap dancing** is an exciting form of dance in which dancers wear special shoes equipped with metal taps. Tap dancers use their feet like drums to create rhythmic patterns and timely beats.

踢踏舞，是一种非常有趣的舞蹈，表演者穿着特别的带有金属踏片的踢踏舞鞋，用脚的各个部位，在地板上摩擦拍击出鼓点和节奏。



**Hip-hop** is a dance style, usually danced to hip-hop music, which evolved from the hip-hop culture. Hip-hop includes various moves such as breaking, popping, locking and crumpling, and even house dance. Improvisation and personal interpretation are essential to hip-hop dancing.

街舞，同嘻哈音乐及说唱文化息息相关。动作是由各种走、跑、跳组合而成，并通过头、颈、肩、上肢、躯干等关节的屈伸、转动、绕环、摆振、波浪形扭动等连贯组合而成的。即兴发挥和对音乐的独特诠释是街舞的核心。



**Belly dance** is a unique form of dance characterized by sharp, rolling movements of the hips and abdomen. The true origins of belly dancing are debated among enthusiasts.

肚皮舞，是一种独特的舞蹈形式，舞者随着变化万千的快速节奏摆动臀部和腹部。爱好者们对它真正的起源都说说法不一。

## ***II. Outline***

Para. 1	Duncan's early life in the United States.
Para. 2	Duncan's successful dancing career.
Para. 3	Duncan's philosophy of modern dance.
Para. 4	The ending.

### III. Detailed study of Passage A

1. The fourth sentence of Paragraph 1. "It was her mother who brought them up."

此处是强调句型: It+be+被强调部分+that/who+其他成分。

被强调部分可以是主语, 宾语和状语, 但不能是谓语。

e.g. It is from the sun that we get light and heat.

我们就是从太阳那里得到的光和热。

It was not until I had read your letter that I understood the true state of the affairs.

直到我看了你的信, 我才了解到事情的真实情况。

It is your ability not what you are or where you come from that matters.

重要的是你的能力, 而不是你是干什么的或你来自哪里。

It was because she was caught in the rain yesterday that she fell ill.

她因为昨天淋了一场雨病倒了。

2. **survive v.** to continue to live or exist 继续生存或存在

e.g.

But soon it was hard to find jobs offering her enough money just to survive.

但不久就很难找到工作来赚钱维持生计了。

Of the six people in the plane that had crashed, only one survived.

在失事飞机上的六个人, 仅一人幸存。

**survivor n.** 幸存者; 生还者

**survival n.** 继续生存或存在; 存活

the survival of the fittest 适者生存

3. **inspire v.** to fill sb. with the ability or urge to do, feel, etc sth. beyond his usual ability, esp. to write, paint, compose, etc 赋予某人灵感 (尤指写作、绘画、作曲等); 启示

e.g.

Duncan visited the British Museum every day for several months where she studied Greek vases and sculpture with their images of ancient Greek women dancing, which inspired her a lot.

邓肯每天都去参观大英博物馆, 在那儿, 她研究希腊花瓶和雕像上古希腊妇女跳舞的形象, 这给她带来了很大的启发。

His noble example inspired the rest of us to greater efforts.

他那崇高的榜样激发我们大家更加努力。

The Lake District scenery inspired Wordsworth to write his greatest poetry.

湖区的美景给了华兹华斯灵感而创作出他最伟大的诗篇。

**inspiration n.** 灵感

e.g. Genius is 10% inspiration and 90% perspiration.

天才是 10% 的灵感加上 90% 的勤奋。

**inspiring a.** 鼓舞人心的

**inspired a.** 受灵感启示的

4. **perform v.** to act (a play), play (a piece of music), do (tricks) to entertain an audience  
演出, 表演

e.g.



In 1900, she had a chance to perform for a large audience at London's Lyceum Theater.

1900 年，她获得一个在伦敦兰心大剧院为众多观众表演的机会。

They are performing his piano concerto tonight.

他们今晚要演出他的钢琴协奏曲。

**performer** n. 表演者，演出者

**performance** n. 演出，演奏

**5. appreciate** v. to understand and enjoy, value highly; feel grateful 欣赏，鉴赏；感激，感谢

**e.g.**

The audience appreciated what they saw—a young woman in a thin, flowing dress running and jumping across the stage barefoot.

观众们非常欣赏他们所看到的舞蹈——一位年轻的舞者，穿着轻盈飘逸的长裙，光着脚在舞台上舞动、跳跃。

You can't fully appreciate foreign literature in translation.

看翻译作品很难欣赏到外国文学的精髓。

In time you'll appreciate the beauty and subtlety of this language.

总有一天你会体会到这门语言的优美和微妙之处。

You stood by me when I was in great trouble. I'll always appreciate that.

当我身陷困难的时候，你在我身边支持我，我将永存感激。

**appreciative** a. 有欣赏力的；感激的

**appreciatively** ad. 感激地；欣赏地

**appreciation** n. 欣赏；感激

**6. barefoot** a. ad. not wearing anything on one's foot 光脚的；光着脚

**e.g.**

Children are running barefoot in the sand.

孩子们光着脚在沙滩上跑。

People are dancing barefoot on the fire in the hope of "contacting" these holy people.

人们赤脚在火上跳舞，希望能与这些圣人做“亲密接触”。

**bareheaded** 光着头；不戴帽子的

**barelegged** 光着腿的

**7. be talented in** having a natural aptitude or skill for something 在……方面有天赋

**Synonym** be gifted in

**e.g.**

People thought she was talented in dance.

人们认为她很有舞蹈天赋。

Mozart was talented in music.

莫扎特在音乐方面有天赋。

**8. fame** n. being known or talked about by many people 名声，名气

**Synonyms** reputation, popularity, honor, renown

**e.g.**

With both her fame and wealth growing, Duncan moved on to Paris, Berlin, Vienna and many other great cities of Europe.

随着名利双收，邓肯开始游历巴黎、柏林、维也纳及欧洲其他许多大城市。

**famous** a. 著名的

**collocations** hall of fame 名人纪念馆  
fame and fortune 名声与财富  
rise to fame 成名, 名声大振

**9. arise** v. to appear; become evident; originate 出现; 产生

**e.g.**

The name of Duncan frequently arose in Newspapers and magazines.

邓肯的名字经常出现在报刊杂志上。

Use the money when the need arises.

需要时就使用这笔钱。

**collocations** arise...from/out of sth. 由.....引起; 由.....产生

**c.f.** arise, rise, raise

arise vi. (arose, arisen, arising) 呈现, 出现

rise vi. (rose, risen, rising) 上升; 上涨

e.g. The cost of living continues to rise.

生活成本不断上升。

The river has risen by several meters.

河水涨了好几米。

raise vt. (raised, raised, raising) 举起; 筹集

e.g. If you have any questions, please raise your hands.

如果你有任何问题, 请举手。

Every year we have charity days to raise money for unfortunate people.

每年我们的慈善日活动都会为不幸的人们筹集善款善款。

**10.** The second sentence of Paragraph 3 "She preferred to live by her own rules rather than follow the crowd." can be paraphrased as follows:

She would rather live by her own ways than do things according to what others think right or wrong.

**11. prefer to do ...rather than do...** to like better than another or other instead of ; tend to choose instead of 宁愿作某事.....而不愿做某事

**e.g.**

She preferred to live by her own rules rather than follow the crowd.

她忠于自己的原则而不是随波逐流。

I prefer to do hard work rather than do nothing at home.

我宁愿辛勤地工作也不愿在家无所事事。

**12. follow the crowd** to follow the trend 随大流

**e.g.**

The strong-minded people rarely follow the crowd.

意志坚强的人很少随大流

Not wanting to make my controversial views known yet, I preferred to follow the crowd for a while.

我还不想公开我那些会引起争论的观点, 宁可暂且随大流。

**13. connection** n. point where two things are connected 连接点; 联系

**e.g.**

she sought the connection between emotions and movements.

她不断探寻情感和动作之间的联系。



What is the connection between the two ideas?

这两个概念之间有什么联系？

**connect v.** 连接；联合

**connector n.** 连接器

**connect ...with** 连接；与.....联系

**14. lay the foundation for** to construct or base according to a particular principle  
为.....奠定基础

**e.g.**

Her ideas laid the foundation for modern dance today.

她的舞蹈观念为今天被我们称之为现代舞的舞蹈打下了基础。

The meeting may lay the foundation for the company's continuous and healthy growth.

这次会议为企业今后的持续、健康成长奠定了基础。

**15. respond v.** to reply, answer 回答，回复

**Synonyms** reply, answer, react

**e.g.**

She responded to her audience in a famous speech made in Berlin.

她在柏林的一次著名讲演可以很好地回答观众的问题。

A friend of ours suggested we write a book to respond to all the questions.

我们的一个朋友建议我们写一本书去回答所有的问题。

**response n.** 回答；答复

**responsible a.** 有责任的

**16. imitate v.** to copy the behavior 仿效

**Synonyms** simulate, model after

**e.g.**

In my school, I shall not teach the children to imitate my movements but to make their own.

在我的学校，我不会教孩子们模仿我的舞蹈动作，而是让他们创造自己的动作。

Decide what you want to do. Don't just imitate others.

想做什么自己决定，不要一味学别人的样。

**imitation n.** 仿造；仿制品

**imitative a.** 模仿的；仿制的

imitation wool 人造毛

imitation leather 人造革

**c.f. intimate a.** 亲密的

**intimidate v.** 恐吓，威胁

**eliminate v.** 排除，消除

**17.** The last two sentences of Paragraph 3 "There comes the dancer of the future, more glorious and more beautiful than all women that have ever been in past centuries. The highest intelligence exists in the freest body." can be paraphrased as follows:

The dancer of the future is coming, who is the most glorious and beautiful woman than any other woman in the past years, with the highest wisdom and freest body.

**18. glorious a.** having, worthy of or bringing great fame or glory 荣誉的；光荣的

**Synonyms** honor, accolade

**e.g.**

There comes the dancer of the future, more glorious and more beautiful than all women that have ever been in past centuries.

她来了，未来的舞蹈家，带着最自由的灵魂，比过去几个世纪里任何一位女性更荣耀、更美丽。

the glorious days of Elizabeth / 英王伊丽莎白一世光辉的时期

die a glorious death 死的光荣

**glory** n. 光荣；荣誉

**19.** The first sentence of Paragraph 4 “She ended these words with confidence.” can be paraphrased as follows:

After saying these words, Duncan finished her speech confidently.

## ***Get Relaxed***

## **Scripts**

### **Tribute to Michael Jackson**

My friend Michael Jackson once said ‘In a world filled with hate, you must still dare to hope; in a world filled with despair, you must still dare to believe.’ In his too short time with us, Michael dares to believe in our power to make this world a better place.

A song that Michael and I wrote together a quarter of century ago called ‘We are the World’ was reflection of Michael’s belief, but he just can’t wait for this world to change. We must do something about it.

In the song we are about to hear, Michael beautifully expresses the need for humanity, to be in great harmony with mother Earth. This stunning anthem and remarkable film he created to convey it was that the very heart of the ground breaking concert Michael was preparing just before he died.

Many of us saw a sample of this powerful footage in the film ‘This is it’ which by the way is now on DVD. But tonight, we are going to see exactly what Michael wanted, and because Michael was a true visual artist, we’ll see it for the first time in 3D at the Grammys tonight. (3D glasses on)

So right now, some of the greatest, most gifted artists in the world today who were touched by Michael’s music, come together to sing Michael’s song with him to help spread the message that meant very much to him: That we are the world and we’d better start taking better care of it. Ladies and gentlemen, here to sing the Earth Song by and with our friend Michael. Please welcome Celion Dion, Jennifer Hudson, Smokey Robinson, Carrie Underwood and Usher.

I respect the secrets and magic of Nature. That’s why it made me so angry when I see things that are happening; you know, for every second, I hear, the size of a football field torn down in the Amazon that comes really bother me, that’s why I write the song to give some sense of awareness and wakening and hope to people. I love the planet; I love the trees, as big trees in the colors of changing leaves. I love them and respect those things.

(lyrics)

What about sunrise,  
What about rain, what about all the things  
That you said we were to gain.

What about killing fields,  
Is there a time?  
what about all the things,  
That you said was yours and mine.

Did you ever stop to notice?  
All the blood we've shed before  
Did you ever stop to notice?  
This crying earth the sweeping shores  
Aaaaaaaah Aaaaaaaah

What have we done to the world  
Look what we've done  
What about all the peace  
That you pledge your only son...

What about flowering fields  
Is there a time  
What about all the dreams  
That you said was yours and mine...  
Did you ever stop to notice?  
All the children dead from war  
Did you ever stop to notice?  
The crying Earth the weeping shores?  
Aaaaaaaah Aaaaaaaah

I used to dream  
I used to glance beyond the stars  
Now I don't know where we are  
All I know is we've drifted far  
Aaaaaaaah Aaaaaaaah

Hey, what about yesterday (what about us)  
What about the seas (what about us)  
The heavens are falling down (what about us)  
I can't even breathe (what about us)  
What about apathy (what about us)  
I need you (what about you)  
What about nature's worth  
It's our planet's womb

What about us What about animals  
What about it we've turned kingdoms to dust  
What about us What about elephants  
What about us have we lost their trust  
What about us what about crying whales  
What about us we're ravaging the seas  
What about us What about forest trails  
Burnt despite our please (what about us)  
What about the holy land (what about it)  
Torn apart by greed (what about us)  
What about the common man (what about us)  
Can't we set him free (what about us)  
What about children dying (what about us)  
Can't you hear them cry (what about us)  
What is wrong with us?  
Can someone tell me why

What about us What about babies  
What about it what about the days  
What about us what about all their joy  
What about us what about the man  
What about us What about the crying man  
What about us What about Abraham  
What about us what about death again  
Do we give a damn?  
Aaaaaaaah Aaaaaaaah

Unbelievable, unbelievable! Well, Michael Jackson was gone too soon, but he left with us lifetime music. And now it's my honor to present Michael Jackson Recording Academy Lifetime Achievement Award, joined by his cousins. Please welcome Prince and Paris Jackson, everybody.

Thank you! Thank you! We are proud to be here to accept the award on behalf of our father, Michael Jackson. First of all, we'd like to thank God for watching over us for these past seven months, and our grandma, grandpa for their loving support. We'd also like to thank the fans. Our father loved you so much because you were always there for him. Our father was always concerned about the planet and humanity. Through his hard work and dedication, he has helped many charities, and donated to all of them. We'd also...Through all his songs, the message was simple: love. We will continue to spread his message and help the world. Thank you. We love you, daddy.

Daddy was supposed to be here. Daddy could perform this year. But he couldn't perform last year. Thank you. We love you, daddy.

## Passage B

## I. Background information

A **Grammy Award** is an award by the National Academy of Recording Arts and Sciences of the United States to recognize outstanding achievement in the music industry. It is the music equivalent to the Emmy Awards for television, the Tony Awards for stage performances, and the Academy Awards for motion pictures.

The first Grammy Awards ceremony was held on May 4, 1959, and it was set up to honor musical accomplishments by performers for the year 1958. The Grammy Awards are awarded in a series of categories, each of which isolate a specific contribution to the recording industry. The "General Field" is four awards which are not restricted by genre: Album of the Year is awarded to the performer and the production team of a full album; Record of the Year is awarded to the performer and the production team of a single song; Song of the Year is awarded to the writer(s)/composer(s) of a single song; Best New Artist is awarded to a promising breakthrough performer who releases the first recording that establishes the public identity of that artist. Other awards are given for performance and production in specific genres, as well as for other contributions such as artwork and video. Special awards are given for longer-lasting contributions to the music industry.

格莱美奖是由美国国家录音艺术与科学学会举行的音乐评奖活动，也是对音乐方面取得卓越成就的认可。它在艺术方面的影响力相当于电视界的艾美奖，戏剧界的东尼奖和电影届的奥斯卡学院奖。

首届格莱美颁奖典礼于 1959 年 5 月举行，其目的是表彰过去一年中（1958 年）在音乐方面取得卓越成就的人。格莱美下设一系列奖项，每项奖都对各自的唱片行业有着不同的贡献。综合类奖项不受音乐类型限制，细分为四个奖项：年度专辑奖，颁奖对象是歌手及整张专辑的制作人员；年度制作奖，颁奖对象是歌手及单曲制作人员；年度单曲奖，颁奖对象为单曲作词/作曲者；还有最佳新人奖，颁发给发行首张唱片却很有潜力、且在公众心目中树立起艺术家形象的歌手们。其余奖项则颁给特殊音乐类型的歌手和制作人员，以及在音乐艺术和录像带制作方面作出贡献的人员。特别奖则颁发给为音乐界做出长久贡献的人。

**The American Music Awards, (AMA)** is an annual American music awards show created by Dick Clark in 1973. Unlike the Grammys, which are awarded on the basis of votes by members of the Recording Academy, the AMAs are determined by a poll of the public and music buyers.

全美音乐奖，英文名称 **American Music Awards**，简称（AMA），它是美国最富盛名的音乐颁奖礼之一，由迪克·克拉克创办于 1973 年。不同于格莱美奖，获奖者是由娱乐业人员投票所选出，而全美音乐奖则由唱片消费者投票决定。

## II. Text division

Para.A- B	Michael Jackson's early life and performance.
Para. C	Michael Jackson's profound influence on popular culture.
Para. D	Michael Jackson's social charity.
Para. E	Michael Jackson's inappropriate behavior.
Para. F	Michael Jackson's death.

## Section Two

## Reading

### Recognizing the topic sentence (2)

A topic sentence expresses the main idea of a paragraph. It is usually stated in the first sentence or last sentence of the paragraph, as we have discussed in the previous unit. Sometimes it is stated in the middle of a paragraph.

When the topic sentence appears somewhere within the paragraph, it is preceded by one or more introductory sentences that lead up to or introduce the main idea by arousing the readers' interest, or giving background for the main idea.

1

. Sometimes an introductory sentence looks like a topic sentence, but it is meant to grab your attention. It is soon followed by a sentence that changes direction, which will be explained in the rest of the paragraph. And this sentence becomes the real topic sentence.

2. When a paragraph starts with a question, the topic sentence can be found in the middle of a paragraph because a question will never be a topic sentence. But the answer to the question will be the topic sentence.

Example 1

You should get oil change every 3,000 miles. You need to check the air pressure in your tires and have them rotated. There are some things you should do regularly to maintain your car in good condition. It is also important to check the battery voltage and all fluid levels. Don't forget to inspect the belts and hoses for signs of wear.

The topic sentence of this paragraph is in the middle.

The third sentence: There are some things you should do regularly to maintain your car in good condition.

Example 2

Have you ever wondered why products come in the colors they do? For instance, why is toothpaste often green or blue and shampoo often golden-yellow? Manufacturers pick the colors that are associated with qualities consumers' value in certain products. For example, it's known that blue symbolizes purity to most people and that green is refreshing. These are both desirable qualities in toothpastes. Manufacturers also know that golden-yellow symbolizes richness (as in real gold or egg yolks), so they frequently choose this color for shampoos and cream rinses— products in which consumers value richness.

The topic sentence of this paragraph is in the middle after the two questions.

Manufacturers pick the colors that are associated with qualities consumers' value in certain products.

## Writing

### An e-mail

**Steps taken to write an e-mail in English**

1. **Subjects/Titles.** Give the message a subject/title. E-mail messages without a subject

may not be opened because of a fear of viruses, and put all the key information short and clear for receiver to pay attention to your mail, while all the first letters should be in capital except prepositions.

**2. Greetings.** Start the message with a greeting so as to help create a friendly but business-like tone. The choice of using the other name or the surname will depend on who you are writing to. If you have communicated with the receiver previously and he/she is at the similar level to you, then the use of the other name is appropriate. If the receiver is more senior to you, or you are in doubt, it would be safer to use the person's surname together with a title.

**3. Purposes.** Start with a clear indication of what the message is about in the first paragraph. Give full details in the following paragraph(s). Make sure the final paragraph indicates what would happen next.

**4. Attachments.** Make sure you refer, in the main message, to any attachments you are adding and of course make extra sure that you remember to include attachment(s). If you use an attachment, make sure the file name describes the content, and it is not too general.

**5. Endings.** End the message in a polite way. Common endings are: Yours sincerely, Best regards, Best wishes, Regards

**6. Names.** Include your name at the end of the message. It is most annoying to receive an e-mail which does not include the name of the sender. The problem is that often the e-mail of the sender does not indicate exactly whom it is from.

### Sample

Date: Wed.19, Feb. 2014 12: 32: 11

From: Ben Hudson@123.com

To: Jason Wood@ 168.com

Subject: About insurance affairs

Dear Jason,

All staff of our company has a three-day public holiday from this Friday to Sunday. Sorry to tell you that we cannot deal with your insurance until next Monday.

Respond me if you have any questions.

Sincerely yours,

Ben Hudson

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 词性转换翻译法(1) 名词转译成动词

在英译汉的过程中，有些句子可以逐词对译，有些句子则由于英汉两种语言的表达式不同，就不能逐词对译。原文中有些词在译文中需要转换词性，才能使汉语译文通顺自然。

#### 1. 由动词派生的名词转译成动词

The government called for the **establishment** of more technical schools.

政府号召建立更多的技术学校。



The **remembrance** of these will add zest to his life.

回想起这些事情会给他的生活增添乐趣。

Rockets have found application for the **exploration** of the universe.

火箭已经被用来探索宇宙。

The **mastery** of language is not easy and requires painstaking effort.

学好语言不容易，非下苦功不可。

2. 含有动作意味的名词(在记叙、描写文体中出现较多)往往可以转译成动词。

The **sight** and **sound** of our jet planes filled me with special longing.

看到我们的喷气式飞机，听到隆隆的机声，我感到特别神往。

A glance through his office window offers a panoramic view of the Washington Monument and the Lincoln Memorial.

从他的办公室窗口可以一眼看到华盛顿纪念碑和林肯纪念馆的全景。

Vietnamese War was a **drain** on American resources.

越南战争不断消耗着美国的资源。

The design aims to automatic **operation**, easy **regulation**, simple **maintenance** and a high **productivity**.

设计的目的在于操作自动化、调节方便、维护简易和生产效率高。

3. 英语中有些加后缀-er 的名词，如 **teacher** 教师，**thinker** 思想家等等，有时在句中并不指其身份和职业，而是含有较强的动作意味。在汉语中没有恰当的对应名词时，往往可以译成动词。

He is a good **eater** and a heavy **sleeper**.

他吃得饱睡得香。

I am afraid I can't teach you swimming. I think my little brother is a better **teacher** than I.

我担心自己不能教你游泳。我想我的弟弟比我教得好。

Some of my classmates are good **singers**.

我同班同学中有些人歌唱得很好。

—What kind of **sailor** are you? 你晕不晕船?

—Be a bad **sailor**. 晕船

4. 作为习语主体的名词往往可以译成动词。

Every morning she would go to the lake area for a **walk**.

每天早晨，她都要到湖区去散步。

The next news bulletin, shorter than usual, made no **mention** of the demonstration.

下一个新闻节目比通常短，没有提到游行。

They took a final **look** at it, still intact in the darkness.

他们最后看了它一眼——它依旧安然无恙地耸立在黑暗中。

We lay special **stress** on the importance of offering good follow-up services.

我们特别强调搞好售后服务。

## Section Three

## How to enjoy a live concert

Hearing live music is one of the most pleasurable experiences available to human beings. The music sounds great, it feels great, and you get to watch the musicians as they create it. No matter what kind of music you love, try listening to it live.

### Choose a concert

1. You may ask friends and fellow music lovers what's coming up, what musicians and groups are good to hear.
2. The Internet is overflowing with information about concerts. Concert halls and music organizations post their schedules online. Newspaper and ticket agency web sites list upcoming concerts.
3. Most newspapers publish listings and advertisements for upcoming concerts. Check the Sunday paper for a list of the week's concerts.

### Buy a ticket

You can buy concert tickets in many ways: in person, online, by phone, by mail, or by fax. Every organization offers its own set of ways to buy. Internet or phone sales may add a service charge to the ticket price.

When you buy your ticket, you may have a chance to select your seat. A diagram of the concert hall or theater may be available to help you decide where to sit. Many theaters post seating diagrams online and some phone books include theater seating charts.

### Mind your concert manners

There's nothing mysterious or difficult about how to act at a concert. It's mostly just common sense: the music needs silence, so the audience contributes silence; both the musicians and the audience want to concentrate on the music, so listeners stay put during a performance.

Tips of good concert manners:

1. Be quiet. Mobile phones should be turned off.
2. Stay put. Entering, leaving or walking around may disturb others.
3. Don't clap until the whole piece is over.

### Ways to listen

There are lots of things to enjoy at a concert, lots of things to pay attention to. Your job is to be affected by the music, but you can be affected by whatever most appeals to you, or by whatever grabs your interest. You may appreciate loudness and softness, changes and transformations, different speeds, instrument sounds, melodies, rhythms, ebb and flow of energy, moods and feelings.

### What to watch

A concert is an event for the ears, but there is plenty for the eyes, too. Watch the players and feel their energy and intensity; watch what they do to make their instruments sound in different ways. Watch as the music moves between players, or between groups of players. Watch the way the conductor controls events, or how he or she gives control to the musicians.

---

## ● Suggested Versions

## Passage A

### 现代舞之母

1877年，伊莎多拉·邓肯出生在加利福尼亚旧金山，她是家里四个孩子中最年幼的。在她三岁时，父母的婚姻以离婚收场，母亲独自把他们抚养成人。由于家境贫寒，邓肯在五岁时便教当地的孩子们跳舞争取额外收入。有时，邓肯会被请到富人家跳舞并获得一些报酬。但很快，就很难找到工作来赚钱维持生计了。失业和贫困再次向她袭来，她用最后的几美元买了张载牛的船票去了欧洲。

到伦敦的头几个月，邓肯每天都去参观大英博物馆。在那儿，她研究希腊花瓶和雕像上古希腊妇女跳舞的形象，这给她带来了很大的启发。1900年，她获得一个在伦敦兰心大剧院为众多观众表演的机会。观众们非常欣赏他们所看到的舞蹈——一位年轻的舞者，穿着轻盈飘逸的长裙，光着脚在舞台上舞动、跳跃。不久，伦敦城里的艺术爱好者都在谈论这位来自美国的新舞者，人们认为她很有舞蹈天赋。随着名利双收，邓肯开始游历巴黎、柏林、维也纳及欧洲其他许多大城市并创办了多所舞蹈学校。她的名字经常出现在报刊杂志上。到20世纪早期，邓肯成为了世界上最著名的舞蹈家。

邓肯把舞蹈作为她一生的事业，她忠于自己的原则而不是随波逐流。那时，芭蕾作为一种技巧性强、艺术美感强、需要精心设计编排的舞蹈非常流行。而邓肯的现代舞蹈哲学则摒弃了芭蕾僵硬的舞蹈技巧，取而代之的是自然而然的动作。为重塑舞蹈的高雅艺术形式而非将它作为一种娱乐，邓肯不断探寻情感和动作之间的联系。她的舞蹈观念为今天被我们称之为现代舞的舞蹈打下了基础。当邓肯被问到有关她的舞蹈风格和舞蹈作为一种艺术随着时间的流逝将有什么样的变化时，她在柏林的著名讲演可以很好地回答：“大自然是舞蹈的源泉，波浪、风和地球都和谐地运动着。在我的学校，我不会教孩子们模仿我的舞蹈动作，而是让他们创造自己的动作。未来的舞蹈家将会是那些身心和谐地融合在一起的人，灵魂的自然倾诉用身体的动作表现出来，这就是未来舞蹈家的使命。她来了，未来的舞蹈家，带着最自由的灵魂，比过去几个世纪里任何一位女性更荣耀、更美丽。最高的智慧存在于最自由的身体里。”

邓肯带着自信结束了她的演讲。

## Passage B

### 流行音乐之王

全球最有名的歌手之一——迈克尔·杰克逊，被称为“流行音乐之王”。在他整个演唱生涯中，专辑销量高达750,000,000多张，他的音乐和舞步充满活力，拍摄的音乐电视极具创新性，对整个流行音乐做出了新的诠释。

迈克尔·杰克逊于1958年在美国印第安纳州加里市出生，家中共有9个孩子，他排行第七。杰克逊5岁时便与他的兄弟们组成杰克逊五人组，这个组合以迈克尔为主唱，同时伴有充满活力的舞蹈。他舞技高超、舞台表现非同凡响，尤其是在年轻人心中更是如此。深受美国黑人和白人喜爱的音乐在该组合的影响下变得年轻化，娱乐性更浓。20世纪70年代，该组合改变了唱片公司，也把组合的名字压缩为“杰克逊”。尽管杰克逊逐渐开始单独录制歌曲，但这个组合还是共同继续着他们的辉煌表演。他的首张个人专辑《墙外》发行于1979年。

三年后，杰克逊发行专辑《颤栗》，这张专辑对整个音乐的影响不可或缺，对音乐舞步

更是影响深远。该专辑中，迈克尔·杰克逊身着黑色紧身九分裤，脚配白色袜子，手带闪闪发光的白色水晶手套，观众继而开始关注他身体的动作。他创作了令人震撼的舞步，既可像机器人一样僵硬死板，又可以像水一样轻柔。表演“太空步”时他就像在空中向后退。一直以来《颤栗》不仅是最畅销专辑，而且还获得了 8 次格莱美奖，7 次全美音乐奖，同时也使一种全新的娱乐形式——音乐电视（MV）流行起来。歌曲“颤栗”的音乐电视在整个音乐史上占据着重要的地位。迈克尔·杰克逊深知这些音乐电视完全可以让听众既关注他的音乐，也关注他的形象，因此，他不遗余力地将复杂的情节和舞蹈加以完美的融合，创作出震撼人心的音乐电视。

1985 年，迈克尔·杰克逊参与谱写歌曲“天下一家”，旨在向非洲饥民捐款，由迈克尔·杰克逊和其他多名著名歌手共同演唱录制。这张单曲为灾民筹集了数百万的美金救援，也荣登最畅销单曲榜首。

迈克尔·杰克逊获得巨大成功的同时，也成为颇有争议的人。他的行为越来越让人费解，脸部也接受多次整形手术，行为和说话方式也变得越来越幼稚。杰克逊在加利福尼亚购买了一块很大的岛，并沿用儿童小说《彼得潘》将之命名为梦幻岛，还在这块区域建立了游乐园、私人动物园及一个大型的电影院。后来，由于伤病，杰克逊需要大量服用各种类型的止痛药，这让他负债累累。

迈克尔·杰克逊因心脏病发作，于 2009 年 6 月 25 日去世。全球粉丝们纷纷表示哀悼，世界各地的歌星们纷纷谈论着杰克逊对他们作品的影响，迈克尔·杰克逊是流行音乐界里程碑式的人物，对他的回忆将会永远留存在他那些难以忘怀的音乐中。

---

## ●Suggested Keys and Scripts

### Get Started

1. F 2. F

### Reading for Meaning

#### Task 1

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. D

#### Task 2

1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

#### Task 3

1. **Dance:** modern 现代舞, waltz 华尔兹, jazz 爵士舞, tap dancing 踢踏舞, hip-hop 街舞, Latin dance 拉丁舞, folk dance 民族舞, samba 桑巴, belly dance 肚皮舞。

2. **Fine arts:** oil painting 油画, Chinese painting 国画, sketch 素描, watercolor 水彩画, landscape 山水画。

3. **Music:** classical music 古典音乐, hip-hop 嘻哈, rap 说唱, rock 摇滚, jazz 爵士乐, R&B 节奏蓝调, country music 乡村音乐。

4. **Musical instrument:** violin 小提琴, guitar 吉他, drum 鼓, bass 贝司, flute 长笛, trumpet 小号, saxophone 萨克斯, harp 竖琴。

### Reading for Language

#### Task 4

1. performance    2. appreciated    3. arose    4. glory    5. famous  
6. imitation (imitating)    7. response    8. survivor    9. connect    10. inspiration

#### Task 5

1. was talented in    2. prefer to , rather than    3. responded to    4. laid the foundation for  
5. follow the crowd

#### Task 6

- A. 1. the, the    2. the, a    3. X, the    4. X, an    5. a  
B. 6. C    7. A    8. D    9. C    10. B

### ***Reading for Comprehension***

#### Task 1

1. the leading singer    2. music videos    3. in Africa    4. increasingly strange  
5. heart attack

#### Task 2

1. 5 years old    2. 1979    3. American Music Awards    4. raise money    5. Neverland

### ***Listening & Speaking***

#### Task 1

1. D    2. B    3. B    4. A    5. B

#### Scripts:

1. W. Did you enjoy the concert with your brother yesterday?  
M. My brother was at work. My cousin went with me instead.  
Q. Who went to the concert with the man?
2. W. It's seven already, I suppose the opening ceremony will be put off till 7:30.  
M. Well, the host said something unexpected happened. It will begin in 10 minutes.  
Q. When will the opening ceremony begin?
3. M. Here's a ten-dollar bill. Give me two tickets for tonight's show, please.  
W. Sure. Two tickets and here's \$2.6 change.  
Q. How much does one ticket cost?
4. W. We mean to let everyone know about the painting program, but we don't have enough money for advertising.  
M. How about trying the school radio station? It offers free announcement.  
Q. What does the man suggest they do?
5. W. I still have to buy some tickets for tomorrow's art exhibition.  
M. I don't think the tickets are available as they've been on sale for a week.  
Q. What can we learn from the dialogue?

## Task 2

1. David Mallet    2. 21 to 26    3. Grand Theatre    4. ¥80 to ¥120    5. [www.cqdjy.com.cn](http://www.cqdjy.com.cn)

### Scripts:

A: Hi, Mike. Do you know what is on recently?

B: The famous music play *Cats* directed by David Mallet is on in the Grand Theatre from December 21 to 26.

A: Oh, I've heard of that. It is famous throughout the world.

B: You seem to be interested in it, don't you?

A: Yes, how much is the ticket?

B: It varies from ¥80 to ¥120.

A: Ok. But how can I get it? Shall I make a phone call?

B: Sounds great. Dial (023)62863166.

A: I will.

B: You can also book the ticket on the website. [www.cqdjy.com.cn](http://www.cqdjy.com.cn).

A: But I don't know how to do it online.

B: Actually, it's not as difficult as you expected. A: Anyway, I will have a try. Thank you.

B: My pleasure.

## Task 3

Question 1. What kinds of clubs do you have?/ Would you tell me the names of your clubs?

Question 2. How about membership fee? / How much would you charge me for membership?

Question 3. What are the requirements? / Would you tell me the requirements?

Answer1. Drawing club.

Answer2. Strong interests in drawing.

Answer3. Yes, before September 30, 2013.

### Scripts

Question1: Which club would you like to join?

Question 2: what qualifications do you have?

Question 3: Could you tell me the deadline for application?

## Task 4

Enjoy your time

# English Song

## Thriller

It's close to midnight  
something evil's lurkin' from the dark  
Under the moonlight  
You see a sight that almost stops your heart  
You try to scream  
But terror takes the sound before you make it  
You start to freeze  
As horror looks you right between the eyes  
You're paralyzed  
'Cause this is thriller  
Thriller night  
And no one's gonna save you  
From the beast about to strike  
You know it's thriller  
Thriller night  
You're fighting for your life  
Inside a killer  
Thriller tonight, yeah  
You hear the door slam  
And realize there's nowhere left to run  
You feel the cold hand  
And wonder if you'll ever see the sun  
You close your eyes  
And hope that this is just imagination  
Girl, but all the while  
You hear a creature creepin' up behind  
You're outta time

'Cause this is thriller  
Thriller night  
There ain't no second chance  
Against the thing with the forty eyes, girl  
(Thriller)  
(Thriller night)  
You're fighting for your life  
Inside a killer  
Thriller tonight  
Night creatures call



And the dead start to walk in their masquerade  
There's no escaping the jaws of the alien this time  
(They're open wide)  
This is the end of your life

They're out to get you  
There's demons closing in on every side  
They will possess you  
Unless you change that number on your dial  
Now is the time  
For you and I to cuddle close together, yeah  
All through the night  
I'll save you from the terror on the screen  
I'll make you see  
That this is thriller  
Thriller night

'Cause I can thrill you more  
Than any goule would ever dare try  
(Thriller)  
(Thriller night)

So let me hold you tight

And share a  
(killer, diller, chiller)  
(Thriller here tonight)

'Cause this is thriller  
Thriller night

Girl, I can thrill you more  
Than any goule would ever dare try  
(Thriller)  
(Thriller night)

So let me hold you tight

And share a  
(killer, thriller)

I'm gonna thrill you tonight  
[Rap]

Darkness falls across the land  
The midnight hour is close at hand  
Creatures crawl in search of blood

To terrorize y'all's neighborhood  
And whosoever shall be found  
Without the soul for getting down  
Must stand and face the hounds of hell  
And rot inside a corpse's shell

I'm gonna thrill you tonight  
(Thriller, thriller)  
I'm gonna thrill you tonight  
(Thriller night, thriller))  
I'm gonna thrill you tonight  
Ooh, babe, I'm gonna thrill you tonight  
Thriller night, babe  
[Rap]

The foulest stench is in the air  
The funk of forty thousand years  
And grizzly ghouls from every tomb  
Are closing in to seal your doom  
And though you fight to stay alive  
Your body starts to shiver  
for no mere mortal can resist  
the evil of the thriller

#### Task 5

1. The power it possessed was mighty.
2. No single music can be designed to satisfy all listeners at the same time.

#### Task 6

1. B    2.C    3. D

#### Task 7

1. Music and our health are interconnected.
2. First of all, it has positive effects on our minds.
3. And it also has the power of healing certain pain.
4. Moreover, music has certain effects on the interpersonal skills of an individual.
5. Last but not least, music brightens up the atmosphere around you and cheers you up.

#### Task 8

Date: Wed.18, Nov. 2013 10: 38: 17

From: Chris Owen<chow@se.se>

To: Eddie George<edge@m.washingtong.edu.>

Subject: Asking for a recommendation

Dear Eddie,

I am told that the dance club has been set up on your campus, which attracts many dance addicts. As you know, dancing has been my favorites and I also have received many dance awards. I'm wondering if you could recommend me.

### Task 9

1. 迈克尔·杰克逊坚信他会克服所有的困难。
2. 大多数青少年崇拜电影明星。
3. 提到舞蹈，那个女孩就全神贯注起来。
4. 他运用电吉他改变了传统音乐，将白人乡村音乐和伤感的黑人民歌融为一体，非常激动人心。
5. 他坚持说自己演出迟到是因为交通阻塞。

### Task 10

1. 未来的舞蹈家将会是那些身心和谐地结合在一起的人，心灵的自然倾诉是以身体的动作表现出来。
2. 邓肯带着自信结束了她的演讲。
3. 他高超的舞技和舞台表现非同凡响，尤其是在年轻人心中更是如此。
4. 由于伤病，杰克逊需要大量服用各种类型的止痛药，这让他负债累累。
5. 她来了，未来的舞蹈家，带着最自由的灵魂；比过去几世纪的任何一位女性更荣耀、更美丽。最高的智慧存在于最自由的身体里。

## Workshop

### Task 1.

Picture 1. shows

Picture 2. do some search

Picture 3. personal information

Picture 4. seats

### Task 2

1. Choose a concert. (Ask friends or music lovers; search on line or from newspapers)
2. Buy a ticket. (How to buy a ticket; choose a seat)
3. Mind your concert manners. (Tips of good concert manners)
4. Ways to listen
5. What to watch

# Unit Five

## Covering Roads

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	conventional, fulfill, passion, inspiration, relaxation, assistance, enthusiastic, ensure, bitterly, tolerance			
	be obsessed by, settle in, take advantage of, run away from, to some extent			
	Prepositions & Interjections			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	Traveling	Catching main ideas (1)	A note of asking for leave	Transferring part of speech (2)
<b>Workshops</b>	1.Talking about how to prepare for traveling abroad		2.Talking about how to travel abroad independently	

### Section One

#### Passage A

#### I. Background information



1. Kauai is geologically the oldest of the main Hawaiian Islands. With an area of 562.3 square miles (1,456.4 km<sup>2</sup>), it is the fourth largest of the main islands in the Hawaiian. Known also as the "Garden Isle". Kauai lies 105 miles (169 km) across the Kauai Channel. Native Hawaiian tradition indicates the name's origin in the legend of Hawaiiloa — the Polynesian navigator attributed with discovery of the Hawaiian Islands. The story relates how he named the island of Kauai after a favorite son. Therefore, a possible translation of Kauai is "place around the neck", meaning how a father would carry a favorite child.

考艾岛是夏威夷群岛里最古老的小岛，面积达 562.3 平方英里 (1,456.4 km<sup>2</sup>)，是夏威夷第四大岛。这个花园小岛颇负盛名，距离考艾海峡 105 英里 (169 km)。在当地的传说里，“考艾”这个名字来源于玻里尼西亚航海英雄 Hawai Iloa。当年他发现了这个小岛，并用自己最喜爱的儿子的名字为其命名。因此，“Kauai”经常被翻译为“颈边之地”，意为父亲携带最爱之子的方式。

2. Poi is a Hawaiian word for the primary Polynesian staple food made from the underground plant stem or corm of the taro plant (known in Hawaiian as *kalo*). It is a traditional part of Native Hawaiian cuisine. Poi is produced by mashing the cooked corm (baked or steamed) until it is a highly viscous fluid. Water is added during mashing and again just before eating to achieve the desired consistency, which can range from liquid to dough-like (poi can be known as "one-finger", "two-finger" or "three-finger" poi, alluding to how many fingers are required to scoop it up in order to eat it, which depends on the consistency).

Poi 是一个夏威夷词，指的是玻里尼西亚人用芋头做成的主食，是夏威夷当地的传统佳肴之一。其做法是将煮熟芋头捣碎至粘性流体状。在捣碎的过程中可以加入水，使其口味爽滑，其形态可以从粘性流体状到面团状。



3. Picket fences are a type of fence often used decoratively for domestic boundaries. A picket fence, ideally white, is seen by some as a symbol of the ideal middle-class suburban life, with a family and children, large house, and peaceful living. In recent years, some people have associated picket fences with what they regard as the more negative aspects of this lifestyle, meaning the dull life without passion.

尖篱笆是一种装饰性的家庭围栏，一般为白色，象征着理想的中产阶级郊区生活，有家庭、

孩子、大房子和宁静的生活。近年来，人们更多地将“picket fences”与这中生活方式的消极面联系在一起，象征中产阶级乏味而缺乏激情的生活。

## ***II. Outline***

Para. 1	The different purposes of traveling.
Para. 2	The author's life before his first travel.
Para. 3	The author's first unforgettable experience in Hawaii.
Para. 4	The author's new life after the travel.
Para. 5	The true meaning of travel.

## ***III. Detailed study of Passage A***

**1. conventional a.** following accepted customs and proprieties 传统的，常规的  
**e.g.**

Before I left my conventional life behind to pursue the unknown, I had felt a little lost.

在离开我一贯的生活去追寻未知世界以前，我曾感到有点失落。

After conventional opening remarks, he made a brilliant speech.

在一个常规的开场白后，他做了个很精彩的演讲。

**conventionally ad.** 照惯例；照常套

**convention n.** 惯例；公约

**2.** The second sentence of Paragraph 2 “I was obsessed by the notion that money was the only way to find true happiness.” can be paraphrased as follows:

I always hold the belief that it is money that can bring me happiness.

**3. be obsessed by** to be always talking or worrying about a particular thing 着迷，使烦扰

**e.g.**

I was obsessed by the notion that money was the only way to find true happiness.

一直以来我都迷信金钱是找到真正幸福的唯一途径。

He was obsessed by money, so he made a mistake.

他被金钱所迷眼，所以才会犯这样的错误。

**obsess v.** 着迷，困扰

**obsessed a.** 着迷的

**obsession n.** 困扰；沉迷

**4.** The fourth sentence of Paragraph 2 “Several years later, career success came and even the money came, but why didn't I feel fulfilled?” could be paraphrased as follows:

With years passing by, even though I had succeeded in career and earned large sum of money, I still felt empty.

**5. fulfill v.** to meet the requirements or expectations of 满足；完成

**Synonyms** to be satisfied, accomplish

**e.g.**

Several years later, career success came and even the money came, but why didn't I feel fulfilled?

多年以后，我的事业获得了成功，钱也挣得不少，但我为什么没有感到满足呢？

We work closely with companies to fulfill their staffing needs.

我们与企业紧密合作，以满足它们的招聘需求。

**fulfilled a.** 满足的

**6. ensure v.** to make certain of something 保证，确保

**Synonyms** assure, insure

**e.g.**

Was it the money that ensured the passion and happiness in life?

难道金钱不是生活中激情和幸福的保障吗？

If you want to ensure that you will catch the plane, take a taxi.

你要想确保能赶上那班飞机，就坐出租车去吧。

**7. passion n.** a strong feeling or emotion 激情；热情

**e.g.**

He has a strong passion for pop music.

他很喜欢流行音乐。

Life needs curiosity, enthusiasm and passion, which depends on how we think of the world.

生活需要好奇心、热情和激情，这都取决于我们怎么看待这个世界。

**passionate a.** 热情的；激情的

**passionately ad.** 激昂地；热烈地

**8. inspiration n.** arousal of the mind to special unusual activity or creativity 灵感

**e.g.**

No longer could I stand a life without passion and inspiration.

我再也无法忍受这种缺乏激情和灵感的生活了。

Many poets and artists have drawn their inspiration from nature.

许多诗人和艺术家从大自然中获得他们的灵感。

**inspire v.** 鼓舞；激发

**inspired a.** 有创见的；有灵感的

**inspiring a.** 令人振奋的；激励人的

**9.** The first sentence of Paragraph 3 “However, not until two months later did I take the brave step and go upon an adventure.” can be paraphrased as follows:

However, it was two months later that I bravely set off for an adventurous journey.

**10. relaxation n.** a feeling of refreshing tranquility and an absence of tension or worry 放松；消遣

**e.g.**

The first trip I embarked on was one week relaxation in Kauai.

我的第一次旅行是在夏威夷考艾岛放松了一周。

Would you like to have some relaxation after swimming?

游泳后你愿意放松一下吗？

**relax v.** 放松；消遣

**relax oneself** 放松自己

**11.** The third sentence of Paragraph 3 “It seemed as if the Garden Island had known I was coming, the rainy skies cleared when I landed.” can be paraphrased as follows:

When I arrived at the island, the rain stopped and it became sunny, just as if the island



knew I was coming.

**12. settle in** to make one's permanent home somewhere 安顿; 适应

**e.g.**

I quickly settled in my new home for the week.

我很快在即将要度过一周的新家安顿了下来。

Later, man began to settle in the places where food and water were plentiful.

后来, 人们开始在有充足食物和水的地方定居下来。

**13. take advantage of** to make good use of the opportunity offered by 利用...机会

**e.g.**

I took advantage of the blue skies and went straight to Waimea Canyon on the west side of the island and had a picnic.

趁着蓝天白云的好天气直奔小岛西面的威美亚峡谷, 在那里野餐。

I'll take advantage of fine weather to go swimming.

我想趁天气好去游泳。

**14. enthusiastic** a. having or showing great excitement and interest 热心的; 热情的

**e.g.**

The natives were enthusiastic and patient.

那里的居民热情而耐心。

He doesn't know much about this subject, but he's very enthusiastic.

他对这事所知不多,但他非常热心。

**enthusiasm** n. 热情; 热心

**enthusiastically** ad. 热情地; 热心地

**enthusiast** n. 热心人; 热衷者

**15. assistance** n. the activity of contributing to the fulfillment of a need or furtherance of an effort or purpose 援助; 帮助

**e.g.**

With their assistance I even made it though not that successfully.

在他们的帮助下, 我居然做出一个 Poi, 尽管不算太好。

We are ready to render them economic assistance.

我们愿意向他们提供经济援助。

**assistant** n. 助手, 助理

**assist** v. 帮助, 协助

**16.** The last sentence of Paragraph 3 "Wasn't it the happiness that I had bitterly searched for during my past 40 years?" can be paraphrased as follows:

It was the happiness that I had searched for during my past life.

**17. bitterly** ad. with bitterness, in a resentful manner 痛苦地; 强烈地

**e.g.**

Wasn't it the happiness that I had bitterly searched for during my past 40 years?

这不正是我过去四十年里苦苦寻找的幸福吗?

They were bitterly opposed to the scheme.

他们强烈反对这个计划。

**bitter** a. 苦的; 痛苦的

**bitterness** n. 苦味; 悲痛

**18. run away from** to escape from; avoid doing sth. 逃出; 回避

**e.g.**

Some people say I must be running away from something to travel for so long.

有人说我花那么多的时间旅行是在逃避某些事情。

We should not run away from the responsibilities.

我们不能逃避责任。

**19. to some extent** to certain degree 在某种程度上

**e.g.**

To some extent, I am running away from the life I wasn't enjoying, running away from past failures, running away from the mundane, running away from the pain of losing a loved one...

我想从某种意义上可以这么说，我在逃避我不喜欢的生活，逃避过去的失败，逃避凡尘俗世，逃避痛失爱人的痛苦.....

Local assembly will help sale to some extent.

在当地组装将在某种程度上促进产品销售。

**20. tolerance n.** the power or capacity of an organism to tolerate unfavorable environmental conditions 宽容；忍耐力

**e.g.**

As much as I am running away from things, I am also running towards something too: new experiences, personal growth, tolerance, gratefulness, education, and most importantly, a new life.

就像我在逃避一些事情一样，我同时也在追寻：追寻新的经历，追寻个人的成长足迹，追寻宽容的胸怀、优雅的风度和广博的学识；其实，最重要的是，我在追寻新的生活。

In daily life, there can be some tolerance of unpunctuality.

在平常的生活中，对不准时的行为可以给予一些宽容。

**tolerant a.** 宽容的；容忍的

**tolerantly ad.** 容许地(能忍耐地)

**tolerate v.** 容许；忍受

## ***Get Relaxed***

### **Scripts**

#### **San Francisco Vacation Travel Guide**

San Francisco is a spectacular, fun city on the central coast of California about 350 miles from L.A.. It's bursting with a youthful energy that will guarantee you have an amazing and unforgettable adventure. On the northern end of the San Francisco peninsula, the city invites you to explore hip neighborhoods, elegant buildings, beautiful parks and gardens, and enjoy a liberal, relaxed atmosphere. And there's no end of things to see. Union Square, in the heart of downtown, is San Francisco's finest shopping region. The neighborhood is famous for wide streets, clanging cable cars and some amazing shopping. And don't forget about the Square itself, which is a great place to sit back, relax and do some serious people-watching.

Just a few minutes north, San Francisco's Chinatown is 8 blocks of bustling activity with

storefronts and alleyways selling all manner of strange and exotic goods. One of the largest Chinese communities in the US, San Francisco's Chinatown is filled with exotic sights and sounds and a little bit of eastern mystique. Less than a mile to the east, the Embarcadero is a busy waterfront roadway that runs right around the port area, with some of San Francisco's most famous landmarks, including Market Street, the Bay Bridge and the San Francisco Ferry Building. Fisherman's Wharf is at the northern end of the Embarcadero and has a great assortment of shops, bars and restaurants, and is right on the bay. Here you can grab a relaxed meal and a cool drink and be entertained by colorful street performers, or just enjoy the views along the waterfront. A short stroll away is Pier 39 which has some of the best views of San Francisco Bay, and a resident sea lion community that has been basking in the sun at the Pier for more than 20 years.

The island fortress of Alcatraz sits ominously in the bay and is now a popular attraction, with tours departing from Fisherman's Wharf several times a day. Up until 1963, The Rock was home to America's hardest prisoners but where there was once only concrete, steel and barbed wire, there are now gardens and wildflowers. If you listen carefully, the eerie passages and cramped cells still echo with footsteps from the past. Not far from downtown is the Haight-Ashbury district where Victorian-styled buildings echo with memories of the hippy days of the 60s. There are still many pockets of counterculture where the Summer of Love lives on, and cafés, smoke shops and music stores still sell peace and love.

Halfway between Fisherman's Wharf and the Golden Gate Bridge is the Palace of Fine Arts. A survivor from the 1915 Panama-Pacific Expo, and built in the Beaux-Arts style, it's covered in greenery and surrounded by a peaceful lagoon. It's a perfect place for a quiet afternoon stroll. At more than a thousand acres, Golden Gate Park stretches almost halfway across the peninsula and contains the Conservatory of Flowers and the tranquil Japanese Tea Garden. The park is the perfect place to enjoy the outdoors, or just relax and recharge in some peaceful surroundings. The Golden Gate Bridge sits majestically over the mouth of the bay, and invites millions of visitors to the city each year. Almost 2 miles long and 750 feet high, the Golden Gate Bridge connects San Francisco to the nearby Marin Headlands. The pedestrian walkway spanning the length of the bridge is a superb way to see sweeping views across the bay and out over the Pacific Ocean.

Baker Beach is located just to the west of the Golden Gate Bridge and has spectacular views across the mouth of the bay to the distant Marin Headlands. It enjoys a reputation as San Francisco's best sandy beach, but the views alone are worth the trip. Just north of San Francisco in Marin County, the ancient redwoods of Muir Woods National Monument tower up to 260 feet high with some dating back almost 800 years. Local rangers can provide guided tours along pathways that loop through the forest, or visitors can enjoy the hush sounds of nature and explore one of America's natural treasures at their own pace. On the eastern side of Marin County is the charming bayside hamlet of Sausalito. In its early days it was a small artist colony, but now it's a relaxed bayside community filled with cafés and art galleries. A short stroll down any street will bring you to some of the most beautiful views across the bay. And over there, in the distance, beckoning like a siren's song is dazzling San Francisco - tempting you back for another taste. A temptation you'll find hard to resist.

## Passage B

### I. Background information

With Travel having become a global need, safety measures have become of high priority so as to avoid losing any life or valuable items. While traveling, travelers are always advised to adopt certain precautions in order to make their travel safer and avoid any incidents of violence. For this, travelers should take certain advice such as leaving their passport copies to a trusted person, avoiding dealing with strangers, following local laws and avoiding carrying any weapons of destruction etc. However, when using personal transport, certain precautions should be taken such as seat belts while driving, keeping to speed limits when driving and so on.

旅游已成为一种全球需要,安全问题尤要引起注意,以免失去生命或任何贵重物品。旅行时,建议游客采取一定的预防措施,使他们的旅行更加安全,避免任何的暴力事件。为此,旅行者应该遵守一些建议,如把护照的复印件留给信任的人、避免与陌生人打搭腔、遵循当地法律、避免携带任何杀伤性武器等。然而,当使用个人交通工具时,应采取某些预防措施,如开车时系好安全带,注意限速行驶等。

### II. Text division

Para. A	The importance of one's safety while traveling abroad.		
Para. B-G	Several tips on traveling abroad.	Para. B	Don't deal with strangers.
		Para. C	Know and follow the local laws.
		Para. D	Let someone know where you are going.
		Para. E	Avoid traveling during elections in some countries.
		Para. F	Use electrical <i>appliances</i> safely in foreign countries.
		Para. G	Learn as much as you can about the region before taking a trip.

## Section Two

### Reading

#### Catching main ideas (1)

主题思想 (the Main Idea) 是作者在文章中要表达的核心内容,也是作者自始至终要说明的问题。能否抓住一篇文章的主题思想,体现了读者总结、概括和归纳事物的能力。可以说,找出主题思想是一项十分重要的阅读技能。

一段文章的中心思想常常由主题句 (Topic Sentence) 表达。主题句常常位于段首或段尾处,间或出现在段落中间。同样,一篇文章的中心思想也常常在开始或结尾段点出。因此在阅读

中，我们要特别注意文章的开头或结尾。例一：

English is clearly an international language. It is spoken by pilots and airport control operators on all the airways of the world. Over 70 percent of the world's radio programs are in English.

本段主题句为首句，其后的内容句均说明首句。例二：

Some students prefer a strict teacher who tells them exactly what to do. Others prefer to be left to work on their own. Still others like a democratic discussion type of class. Not one teaching method can be devised to satisfy all students at the same time.

本段中心思想在结尾句得到体现，它是此段内容的结论。例三：

For adults a cold is not that serious. However, this is not the case for children. Cold symptoms in children may be signs of more serious diseases and should be given prompt medical attention.

本段主题句为第二句，因为在 **however** 后面才是作者真正的看法，并在下文中进一步作了说明。

然而，我们也常常发现，有的主题思想并非直接由一、二个句子表述，而是在文中间接暗示出来，这就需要读者根据文中细节进行概括与归纳，找出主题思想。例四：

It's no wonder that we have so many rejections for physical reasons in our Selective Service. Since October of 1948, some six million young men have been examined for military duty. Of these, more than a million were rejected as physically unfit for military service. To get two men today, the United States Army must call seven men. Of the five rejected three are turned down for physical reasons and two for mental problems. To get the 196thousand additional men we needed for Berlin, the government had to call up 750 thousand men. And the rejection rate is increasing each year. The reason for this problem is that we are under exercised as a nation. We look, instead of play. We ride, instead of walk. The way we live prevents us from being healthy.

本段中找不到某一句作为主题，根据文中的内容进行归纳，可找出主题思想，即：“The military's rejection rate for physical reason is increasing because this nation's lack of exercise is leading to their poor health. ”

## Writing

### A note of asking for leave

#### Steps taken to write a note of asking for leaving in English

1. **The date** is the time when the note is written. It is in the upper right or left corner of the note.
2. **Salutation** usually begins with Dear \_\_\_\_\_. The blank is for the name of the person you are writing to. There is a comma behind the person's name.

First and foremost, make sure that you spell the recipient's name correctly. You should also confirm the gender and proper title. Use Mrs. if you are 100% sure that a woman is married. Under less formal circumstances or after a long period of correspondence it may be acceptable to address a person by his or her first name. When you don't know the name of a person and cannot find out this information you may write, "To Whom It May Concern". It is standard to use a comma after the salutation. Here are some common ways to address the recipient:

- Dear Mr. Powell,
- Dear Professor Wang,
- Dear Prof Wang Ming,
- Dear Wang Ming,
- Dear Frederick Hanson,
- Dear Sir or Madam,
- Dear Madam,
- Dear Sir,

**3. The body** includes the **reasons**, and **the time** that you want to ask for leave. If there is a certificate, it is better to mention it to the person you are writing to. And enclose the certificate with your note.

**4. The signature** tells who writes the note. It is in the lower right or left corner of the note.

Here are some common ways to close a letter. Use a comma between the closing and your handwritten name.

Yours sincerely,

Sincerely,

Sincerely yours

Thank you,

Best wishes

All the best,

Best of luck

Warm regards,

Yours truly,

Your faithfully,

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 词性转换翻译法(2) 形容词转译成动词

英语中表示知觉、情感、欲望等心理状态的形容词，在系动词后作表语，翻译时往往可转译成汉语的动词，常见的有：

●与思维和知觉相关的形容词：aware, conscious, certain, sure, mindful, ignorant, alert.

●与情感相关的形容词：glad, pleased, cautious, careful, angry, happy, excited, confident, thankful, grateful, concerned, eager, afraid, doubtful, sorry.

●与欲望相关的形容词：desirous, hopeful, anxious, keen, enthusiastic, zealous.

I am **hopeful** this misunderstanding will be rectified very quickly.

我相信这个误会将很快得到纠正。

I am **anxious** about his safety.

我担心他的安全。



I am **confident** that everything will be all right.

我坚信一切都会好起来。

We were not **content** with our present achievement.

我们不满足于我们现有的成就。

Mary is always **eager** for new experiences.

玛丽总是渴望拥有新的经历。

## Section Three

### How to prepare for traveling abroad

**1. Research.** It may seem obvious but many people don't bother to find out the most basic things about the country they are traveling to. You should do this to avoid surprise or disappointment.

**2. Check on the local weather.** If you live in Florida and you are traveling to northern Greenland, you'll be in for a shock unless you know that much colder weather is normal there. What is the best season to travel to your destination? This will help you pack the right clothes and products needed for the specific climate you are visiting.

**3. Medical and general insurance coverage.** Make sure you are covered and it is adequate for your destination.

**4. Do you have all the paperwork and documentation?** If not, get it! Be sure before you leave for your trip. The most obvious one of all – is your passport up to date? And if not, do you have enough time to renew it before you leave? You'd be surprised, amazed even, at how many people get this one wrong.

**5 Plan on driving in the place you intend to travel to?** Check that you have an acceptable license. You may need an international driving license. Are you familiar with the local driving laws where you are going? If not, become familiar. Make sure the GPS is loaded with the correct maps if you plan on using one.7. Expressing appreciation to host and hostess when you're leaving.

**6 Money.** Compare the local currency to yours and figure out how much is needed for your stay. Do not carry large amounts of currency on your person, but have enough for taxis, tips and food.

---

## • Suggested Versions

### Passage A

#### 我的难忘之旅

旅行对于每个人都是十分私人的体验。有些人旅行是为了“寻找自我”，有些人旅行是为了体验不同的文化和习俗，有些人为了名胜古迹和地标建筑而踏上旅程，还有些人则是为了感受旅行所带来的自由。但是旅行对我来说意味着什么呢？我想，以上都有吧。

在离开我一贯的生活去追寻未知世界以前，我曾感到有点失落。一直以来我都迷信金钱



是找到真正幸福的唯一途径。我不断努力，想要做得更好，不断召开开会议、发布新产品、制定营销策略等等。多年以后，我的事业获得了成功，钱也挣得不少，但我为什么没有感到满足呢？难道金钱不是生活中激情和幸福的保障吗？我再也无法忍受这种缺乏激情和灵感的生活了，是时候逃离这平淡的现实生活了。

但是，直到两个月后我才迈出了勇敢的第一步。我的第一次旅行是在夏威夷考艾岛放松了一周。这个花园岛似乎知道我要来，当飞机落地时雨蒙蒙的天空突然放晴了。我很快在即将要度过一周的新家安顿下来，趁着蓝天白云的好天气直奔小岛西面的威美亚峡谷，在那里野餐。第二天我跟一些新朋友一起一路向北，到本地人家中学做夏威夷芋泥饼“Poi”。那里的居民热情而耐心。在他们的帮助下，我居然做出来一个 Poi，尽管不算太好。我们一起享受这可口的美食，给彼此拍照留念，讲述有趣的生活经历，这是多么简单却愉悦的生活啊！这不正是我过去四十年里苦苦寻找的幸福吗？

从那以后，旅行占据了我生活的首要位置，现在，旅行使我的生活充满激情。我和我的朋友迈克一整年都在旅行。我们离开了家人和朋友四处旅行，这些旅行的经历和记忆将使我们在 20 年后回顾往事时了无遗憾。

有人说我花那么多的时间旅行是在逃避某些事情。我想从某种意义可以这么说。我在逃避我不喜欢的生活，逃避过去的失败，逃避凡尘俗世，逃避痛失爱人的痛苦……但我不愿这么想。就像我在逃避一些事情一样，我同时也在追寻：追寻新的经历，追寻个人的成长足迹，追寻宽容的胸怀、优雅的风度和广博的学识；其实，最重要的是，我在追寻新的生活。这就是旅行之于我的意义。

## Passage B

高等教育出版社  
温馨提示

国外旅行可能是有趣的，但却不能保证是顺利的。不管是你自己、还是和家人或朋友去旅游，安全都是特别重要的。你应尽你所能享受你的旅行，同时最大限度保障你的个人安全。记住以下建议，它能让你的国外旅行尽可能地安全。

不要与接近你的陌生人打交道。通常，如果你因某事想得到服务或帮助，那么你最终会接近别人。你要当心试图欺骗你或想偷你东西的人。你能做的最好的事就是无论在机场、大街或宾馆都避免接受任何人的帮助。

在国外城市游玩时，了解并遵守当地法律。在美国，如果超速行驶，你可能只会得到一张罚单，但在某些国家你可能会被监禁一晚。在一些国家，你必须随时携带护照，否则你会被送进监狱。或者，当你到达某些地方时，你必须告诉当地官员你的住所、你的家乡以及停留时间。

始终让人知道你的行踪。大部分人都是和朋友或家人一起去国外旅游。然而，一旦到了国外，人们总是会分开，去做各自的事情。你应该让人知道你的行踪和计划归来的时间。无论怎样，你不能在无人知晓你行踪的情况下闲逛。那是危险和愚蠢的行为。

避免去一些正在进行选举的国家旅行。这一关键时期需要适当严密的戒备，但很多国家忽视了选举期间的安全部署。在一些非洲国家，你很难在选举期间发生的大面积暴力中幸存。因此，最好取消访问。

在国外，注意安全使用电器。当你住在异国宾馆时，你很快便会发现美国电器不适用于欧洲插座。不要试图强行连接或以任何方式改变电器使其匹配，相反地，应去当地购买或向宾馆的工作人员借用、随身携带或者购买适配器或转换器，这样你就可以使用从家里带来的电器设备。

最后，旅游前尽可能多的了解该地区。了解该地区与你所在的区域有何不同。花点时间学习当地礼仪。确认所有的预订，得到你要访问地区的地图，务必知道该城市最危险的区域。大致来说，你应尽可能多的收集信息，以便你在国外感到舒适和安全。

## ● Suggested Keys and Scripts

### ***Get Started***

1. C     2.A

### ***Reading for Meaning***

**Task 1**     1.C 2.B   3. D     4.A   5. C

**Task 2**     1.T   2.T   3. F     4.F   5. F

#### **Task 3**

**1. Types of travel:** Grand Tour 教育旅行, road trip 公路旅行, overland travel 陆地旅行。

**2.Travel attraction:** Grand Canyon 大峡谷, Niagara Falls 尼亚加拉大瀑布, Las Vegas 拉斯维加斯, Statue of Liberty 自由女神像, London Tower Bridge 伦敦塔桥, London Eye 伦敦眼, Buckingham Palace 白金汉宫, Palace of Westminster 威斯敏斯特宫(国会大厦), British Museum 英国博物馆, Triumphal Arch Paris 凯旋门, Eiffel Tower Paris 埃菲尔铁塔, Louvre Museum 卢浮宫博物馆

**3.Traffic:**coach 长途汽车, shuttle 大巴车, taxi/ cab 出租车, underground/subway 地铁, train 火车, helicopter 直升机, express train 特快列车, ferry 轮渡, cable car 缆车

**4.Entertainment item:** go sailing 航海, excursion 远足, 短途旅行, hiking (短途)徒步旅行 horse riding 骑马, rock climbing 攀岩, guided tour 有讲解的游览, camping 宿营, picnic 野餐, water-skiing 滑水, scuba diving 潜水, parachuting 跳伞。

**5. Equipment:** sleeping bag 睡袋, torch/ flashlight 手电筒, raincoat 雨衣, walking boots 登山靴, compass 指南针, guidebook 导游册, map 地图, navigation 导航, helmet 头盔, sun-block/sunscreen 防晒霜, brochure 小册子, mosquito net 蚊帐, spare 备用的, bottled water 瓶装水。

### ***Reading for Language***

**Task 4** 1.conventional 2.fulfilled   3. passionate   4.Inspired   5. relaxation

6. enthusiasm   7. assisted   8. bitterly 9.be tolerated   10. ensure

**Task 5** 1.is obsessed by   2. settled in   3. take advantage of   4. ran away from

5. To some extent

**Task 6** 1. from 2. of 3. on 4. on 5. at 6. to 7. to 8. from 9. in 10. on

## ***Reading for Comprehension***

**Task 1** 1. cheat or steal 2. laws 3. wander around 4. elections 5. alter the appliance

**Task 2** 1. accepting offers 2. dangerous and stupid 3. security arrangements 4. appliances locally 5. comfortable and safe

## ***Listening & Speaking***

**Task 1** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. D

### **Scripts**

1. M: Where do you plan to travel while in the US?

W: New York City first; then I will be heading on to San Francisco.

Q: Where does the woman plan to travel in the second place?

2. W: How many travelers are going to London?

M: Fifteen the first day, another dozen came yesterday.

Q: What's the total number of the travelers?

3. M: Good afternoon, China Youth Travel Agency. May I help you?

W: Oh, yes. I am quite interested in the holiday program you offer in Yunnan.

Q: What's the probable relationship between these two speakers?

4. W: Did you buy anything in the duty-free stores while touring in Paris?

M: Yes. I bought two boxes of chocolates. One for you and the other one for myself.

Q: What did the man buy while touring in Paris?

5. M: It was really a wonderful trip. Which city did you like better, Houston or Chicago?

W: It depends. Everything has two sides.

Q: What does the woman imply?

**Task 2** 1. Air China 2. Chicago 3. 11:00 pm 4. First class 5. \$376 6. 7:00 am

### **Scripts**

A: Good morning, Air China. What can I do for you?

B: Yes, I'd like to make a reservation to Chicago next week.

A: What's your departure date?

B: Monday, September 12.

A: Just a moment, please. There will be two flights to Chicago on Monday. One is at 10:00 am and the other is at 14:00 pm. Which one would you prefer?

B: I think the former is better. What's the flight number?

A: It's CA770, taking off from Beijing at 10:00 am and arriving in Chicago at 11:00 pm.

B: Er... it is a non-stop flight, isn't it?

A: That's for sure.

B: It is decided.

A: Will you take the first class or coach?

B: The first class. What about the fare?

A: One way is \$376.

B: Ok. By the way, what time do I have to be at the airport?

A: You are required to be 3 hours earlier for international flights. The check-in starts at 7:00 am.

B: Thank you very much.

A: My pleasure.

### Task 3

Question 1. What is the name of the travel agency? / Could you tell me the name of the travel agency?

Question 2. What's the date of the trip? / When will we begin our trip?

Question 3. How much does it cost? /How much does a person pay?/ How much will you charge one person?

Answer1. St. Ives

Answer2. By minibus

Answer3. Contact [joytravel@hotmail.com](mailto:joytravel@hotmail.com)

Scripts:

Question1: Do you know what the travel destination is? / What's the name of the place?

Question 2: Could you tell me how you will get there? / Could you tell me how you will get there?

Question3: How can you get detailed information about the trip?

### Task 4

Enjoy your time

## English Song

Country Road Takes Me Home

乡村路带我回家

Almost Heaven, West Virginia

Blue Ridge Mountains, Shenangoah River

Life is old there, older than the trees

Younger than the mountains

Growing like a breeze

Country Roads, take me home, to the place I belong

West Virginia, Mountain mama

Take me home, Country Roads

All my memories, gathered round her  
Miner's a lady, stranger to blue water  
Dark and dusty, painted on the sky  
Misty taste the moonshine, teardrops in my eye  
Country Roads, take me home, to the place I belong  
West Virginia, Mountain mama  
Take me home, Country Roads

I hear her voice in the morning hours she calls me  
The radio reminds me of my home far away  
And driving down the road I get a feeling that  
I should have been home yesterday, yesterday

Country Roads, take me home, to the place I belong  
West Virginia, Mountain mama  
Take me home, Country Roads

Country Roads, take me home, to the place I belong  
West Virginia, Mountain mama  
Take me home, Country Roads  
Take me home, Country Roads  
Take me home, Country Roads

### **Task 5**

1. travelers should be more careful of strangers approaching them while traveling abroad
2. travelers should know and follow the local laws in foreign cities they're visiting

### **Task 6**

1. Travelers shouldn't carry personal information and financial stuff all in one place when traveling to a foreign country.
2. Travelers shouldn't leave valuable things in their hotel rooms when traveling to a foreign country.

### **Task 7**

1. travels—— travel
2. with——for
3. better——best
4. Typical—— Typically
5. informations—— information

### **Task 8**

November 18, 2014

Dear Mr. Thomas,

I can't attend the meeting this morning because I had a high fever. I am writing to ask for one day's leave with the doctor's instruction enclosed. Sorry to have brought you such inconvenience.

Yours respectfully,

Wang Lei

### Task 9

1. 旅客们不知道当地的礼仪。
2. 鲍勃和他全家不信任导游。
3. 他们肯定海南的景色一定会吸引你们所有人。
4. 登黄山时，他意识到他面临的困难。
5. 旅游时，人们更加关心天气的变化。

### Task10

1. 我不断努力，想要做得更好，不断召开会议、发布新产品、制定营销策略等等
2. 但是，直到两个月后我才迈出了勇敢的第一步去冒险。
3. 这不正是我过去四十年里苦苦寻找的幸福吗？
4. 你尽情享受旅行的同时，要尽可能地保障自己的人身安全。
5. 在国外，注意安全使用电器。在宾馆，你很快便会发现美国电器和欧洲插座不匹配，不要试图强行连接或以任何方式改变电器使其匹配。相反地，应去当地购买或向宾馆的工作人员借用。要么随身携带，要么购买适配器或转换器，这样，你就可以使用从家里带来的电器设备了。

## Workshop

### Task 1

Picture 1. passport

Picture 2. customs

Picture 3. hotel

Picture 4. scenic spot

### Task 2

1. Search for your travel destination.
2. Apply for passport and visa.
3. Get as much information as possible about the weather, customs, foods and etc.
4. Purchase some kinds of insurance coverage.
5. Apply for an international driving license.
6. Exchange currency at the bank.

# Unit Six

## Satisfying Your Tastes

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	display, similar, typical, conclude, tasty, excessive, consumption, deny, regular, convenience			
	eat out , devote ... to, take away, relax oneself, make efforts to do			
	Tenses			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	foods	Catching main ideas(2)	A notice	Transferring part of speech(3)
<b>Workshops</b>	1.Talking about how to serve guests to dine		2. Talking about how to order meals	

#### Section One

### Passage A

#### I. Background information

##### 1. American Table Manners





### **Before dining**

Men's hats should never be worn at the table. Ladies' hats may be worn during the day if visiting others.

Before sitting down to a formal meal, gentlemen stand behind their chairs until the women are seated.

A prayer of 'blessing' may be customary in some households, and the guests may join in or be respectfully silent. Most prayers are made by the host before the meal is eaten. Hosts should not practice an extended religious ritual in front of invited guests who have different beliefs.

One does not start eating until every person is served or those who have not been served request that you begin without waiting.

Napkins are placed in the lap. At more formal occasions dinners will wait to place their napkins on their laps until the host places his or her napkin on his or her lap.

At more formal occasions all dinners should be served at the same time and will wait until the hostess or host lifts a fork or spoon before beginning.

Even if one has dietary restrictions, it is inappropriate for non-relatives to request food other than that which is being served by the host at a private function.

### **General manners while dining**

When dish is offered from a serving dish (a.k.a. family style), as is the traditional manner, the food may be passed around or served by a host or staff. If passed, you should pass on the serving dish to the next person in the same direction as the other dishes are being passed. Place the serving dish on your left, take some, and pass to the person next to you. You should consider how much is on the serving dish and not take more than a proportional amount so that everyone may have some. If you do not care for any of the dish, pass it to the next person without comment. If being served by a single person, the server should request if the guest would like any of the dish. The guest may say "Yes, please," or "No, thank you."

When serving, serve from the left and pick-up the dish from the right. Beverages, however, are to be both served as well as removed from the right-handed side.

Eat soup noiselessly, from the side of the spoon. When there is a small amount left, you may lift the front end of the dish slightly with your free hand to enable collection of more soup with your spoon.

If you are having difficulty getting food onto your fork, use a small piece of bread or your knife to assist. Never use your fingers or thumb.

It is acceptable in the United States not to accept all offerings, and to not finish all the food on your plate. No one should ask why another doesn't want any of a dish or why he has not finished a serving.

There should be no negative comments about the food nor of the offering available.

Chew with your mouth closed. Do not slurp, talk with food in your mouth, or make loud or unusual noises while eating.

Say "Excuse me," or "Excuse me. I'll be right back," before leaving the table. Do not state that you are going to the restroom.

Do not talk excessively loudly. Give others equal opportunities for conversation.

Refrain from blowing your nose at the table. Excuse yourself from the table if you must do so.

Burping, coughing, yawning, or sneezing at the table should be avoided. If you do so, say, "Excuse me."

Never slouch or tilt back while seated in your chair.

Do not "play with" your food or utensils. Never wave or points silverware.

You may rest forearms or hands on the table, but elbows.

Do not talk on your phone at the table, or otherwise do something distracting, such as read or listen to a personal music player. Reading at the table is permitted only at breakfast. If an urgent matter arises, apologize, excuse yourself, and step away from the table so your conversation does not disturb the others.

### **The manners of using utensils**

The fork may be used either in the "American" style (use the fork in your left hand while cutting; switch to right hand to pick up and eat a piece) or the European "Continental" style (fork always in left hand.)

Unless a knife stand is provided, the knife should be placed on the edge of your plate when not in use and should face inward.

As courses are served, use your silverware from the outside moving inward toward the main plate.

### **At the end of the meal**

When you have finished your meal, place all used utensils onto your plate together, on the right side, pointed up, so the waiter knows your have finished. Do not place used utensils on the table.

Except in a public restaurant, do not ask to take some uneaten food or leftovers home, and never do so when attending a formal dinner. A host may suggest that extra food be taken by the guests, but should not insist.

Leave the napkin on the seat of your chair only if leaving temporarily. When you leave the table at the end of the meal, loosely place the used napkin on the table to the left of your

plate.

## 美国的餐桌礼仪

### 饭前：

餐桌上男士不应该戴帽子。在白天拜访别人的时候女士专用的帽子例外。

在正式的宴会中，男士们须站在自己的座位后面，等女士们都坐下了以后，才能坐下。

在开始吃饭前，主人要做饭前的谢饭祷告，这在美国的家庭里是很普遍，客人应该加入这个谢饭的祷告，至少要在祷告的时候保持安静以示尊敬。如果被邀请的客人有不同的信仰，主人的谢饭祷告不应该包括深奥的宗教形式。

一般要等到每一个人都得到了食物以后，大家才一起开始吃。除非那些还没有拿到食物的人士请你不要等候，你才可以先吃。

餐巾是放在膝盖上的。在正式的宴会中，客人要等主人把他（她）的餐巾放到膝盖上之后，才把自己的餐巾放上。

在正式的宴会上，食物应同时送到餐桌上的每一位，但还是要等到主人拿起餐具之后客人才能拿起餐具进餐。

如果你不能吃某些食品，在你做客时，（如果主人不是你的亲戚）不应要求主人为你另外再增添你要吃的食品。

### 进餐时的礼仪：

在家庭式的用餐中常常是把一盘菜传到各位的面前，有时由主人把菜拿到客人面前。如果是传的话，你要按其他盘子传的同一个方向把菜传给下一位。把传过来的菜盘子放在你左边，从中取菜，然后传给下一位客人。在取的时候，应该估计一下菜的分量，不要取超过餐桌上人数比例的量，这样的话餐桌上的每一个人都能得到一份。如果你不想吃传过来的菜，那就把它递给下一位，但是千万不要做任何评论。如果是有人把菜盘子端给你，他会问你是否需要，你可以简单地回答“是的，请给一些”或者“谢谢，我不需要”。

当为进餐人士服务的时候，上菜都是从进餐者的左边，而撤盘子的时候，都是从进餐者的右边拿走。但是对于饮料，可以从左右的任何一方呈上和撤离。

应从汤匙的边上喝汤，不要发出声音。如果汤碗里只剩一点汤了，你可以用不拿汤匙的手把汤碗靠近你的一边略略提起，这将更容易使余下的汤流入你的汤匙。

如果用叉子把食物叉起来有困难的话，可以用一小片面包或者餐刀帮忙；但是千万不要直接用手指。

按美国人的习惯，你不一定要吃餐桌上所有的菜或把盘子里的菜吃完。不要询问别人为什么不吃某个菜，或者询问别人为什么不把菜吃完。

不要对餐桌上的菜进行批评，也不应该对菜的分量多少进行品头论足。

闭上嘴咀嚼食物。吃东西的时候，不应发出啧啧的声音、嘴里有食物时不要说话、也不要发出很大的奇怪的声音。

当你需要离开的餐桌的时候，只要说“对不起”或者“对不起，我得离开一下”就可以了。不要说“我去上厕所”之类的话语。

不要大声说话，要让他人也有说话的机会。

千万不要在餐桌上擤鼻子。如果你必须这样做，你得先离开餐桌。

在餐桌上不该打饱嗝儿、咳嗽、打哈欠和打喷嚏之类。万一你做了，赶快向大家表示歉意，说“对不起”。

做在餐桌上，不可以没精打采地坐着，也不可把椅子向后倾斜，翘椅子坐。

不可以玩弄食物或者餐具；更不能拿着餐具手舞足蹈地讲，不能拿餐具指人。

你可以把你手肘以下的部分放在餐桌上，但是不可把手肘放在餐桌上。

餐桌上不可以使用手机讲话也或其他分散精力的事情，比如该看书和听随声听。只有在早餐

的时候才可以看报。如果有什么紧急的事必须通话，那也必须先向全桌的人打个招呼，然后离开餐桌才接电话，以免你的讲话影响大家。

#### **使用餐具的礼仪：**

可以用美式用叉法或欧式用叉法。美国式的用叉法是：右手拿刀左手拿叉；右手不拿刀时，可以用右手拿叉。欧洲式的用叉法是：永远用左手拿叉。

除非餐桌上提供专门放刀的刀架以外，在不用餐刀时，餐刀应该放在远离你的盘中一边，刀口对着你自己。

主菜上来后，用餐具从盘子的边缘向盘子的中心移动来取菜。

#### **宴会结束的礼仪：**

饭后，把所有餐具放在盘子里，靠盘子的右侧，叉子口向上，这时服务员就知道你用餐完毕。不要把餐具放在桌子上。

除了在大众餐馆，不要把剩余的食物带回家，特别是出席正式的晚宴时，更是如此。主人可以建议客人带走剩下的食物，但不强求。

如果只是暂时离开，把餐巾放在椅子上。进餐完毕离开餐桌时，记得轻轻地把用过餐巾放在你餐盘的左方。

## **2. Starbucks**



Starbucks is a large multinational chain of coffee shops with its corporate headquarters in Seattle, Washington. Its coffee shops in the US are especially popular among students and young urban professionals. The company was in part named after Starbucks, a character was in part named after Starbucks, a character in Moby Dick (大白鲸) .

The story of Starbucks coffee history begins in Seattle in 1971, when three friends with a



passion for fresh coffee, Jerry Baldwin, Zev Siegl and Gordon Bowker, opened a small shop and began selling fresh-roasted, gourmet(精致的)coffee beans and brewing and roasting accessories(附属物).

In 1987 Starbucks was up for sale and Howard Schultz, who owned a coffee shop named ILGiornale, raised the \$3.8 million to amalgamate(合并) Starbucks with his own coffee shop .

He modified the Starbucks' bare-breasted mermaid logo into a more socially acceptable figure, changed the name of IL Goiornale to Starbucks and converted the six existing Starbucks' roasting shops into Italian-style elegant(高雅的), comfortable coffee history was just beginning to take shape.

Starbucks is the word's first specialty coffee retailer(零售商), it has more than 16850 coffee shops in over 40 countries and regions, and has grown to be a "Green giant" from a little sea-maid(小美人鱼).

星巴克是一家大型的跨国咖啡连锁企业，总部在华盛顿的西雅图。它在美国的咖啡店尤其深受学生和都市年轻职业者的欢迎。公司的命名部分源于 19 世纪美国小说家赫尔曼·麦尔维尔（Herman Melville）小说《白鲸》中的一个人物 Starbucks。

星巴克咖啡的历史可以追溯到 1971 年，当时在西雅图，三个对鲜咖啡充满激情的朋友 Jerry Baldwin, Zev Siegl 和 Gordon Bowker 开了一个小咖啡店，开始出售精致的鲜烤咖啡豆以及酿造和烘烤与咖啡相关的产品。

1987 年星巴克公司对外销售，Howard Schultz 本来拥有一家名为 ILGiornale 的咖啡店，他又筹集了 380 万美元兼并了星巴克。

他把星巴克原有的赤裸美人鱼标志改成更容易被社会接受的图案，把 ILGiornale 的名字改成星巴克，把当时已有的六家星巴克店装修成高雅的意大利风格，人们逐渐开始悠闲舒适地品味咖啡。

星巴克是世界上第一家有特色的咖啡零售商，在全球的 40 多个国家和地区拥有 16850 家咖啡店，已从一只小美人鱼成长为一个绿色巨人。

## II. Outline

Para. 1	The similar business model of most fast food restaurants.		
Para. 2-4	The popularity of fast food in America and its reasons.	Para. 2	The popularity of fast food
		Para. 3	The first reason of the popularity of fast food.
		Para. 4	The second reason of the popularity of fast food.
Para. 5	The negative effect of excessive consumption of fast food on health and Americans' high expectation to make efforts to keep the food more nutritious and healthier.		

## III. Detailed study of Passage A

1. similar a. having the same or some of the same characteristics 相似的

e.g.

Most fast food restaurants work on a similar principle.

快餐店大都按一个模式经营。

Most fast food restaurants provide customers with similar dishes.

大多数快餐店提供的菜品都相似。

**be similar to** 与...相似

**e.g.**

These two cooking methods are similar to each other in many aspects.

这两种烹饪方法在许多方面类似。

The air crash was similar to one that happened in 1973.

这次飞机失事和 1973 年发生的那起空难很相似。

Similarity n. (pl. similarities) 类似; 相似性; 相似度

2. The third sentence of Paragraph 1 "There is a long counter, above which is displayed a list of the items available, and behind several people are serving." can be paraphrased as follows:

People can see a long counter in almost all fast food restaurants. Various kinds of foods available are exhibited above the counter and behind it several waiters are busy serving.

3. **display n. & v.** something shown to the public 陈列品; exhibiting openly in public view 展览, 陈列; to show, make visible or apparent 显示; 陈列; 表现

**Synonyms** exhibit, show

**e.g.**

There is a long counter, above which is displayed a list of the items available.

通常有一个很长的柜台, 上面摆放了各种可用的物品。

Beethoven displayed a great talent in music when he was a child.

贝多芬还是小孩的时候便表现出很高的音乐天赋。

4. **typical a.** exhibiting the qualities or characteristics that identify a group or kind or category or of a feature that helps to distinguish a person or thing 典型的; 代表性的

**Synonyms** symbolic, characteristic, distinctive, representative

**e.g.**

The typical foods provided in fast food restaurants include hamburger, sandwich, fried chicken, pizza, etc.

快餐店提供的典型快餐食品包括汉堡、三明治、炸鸡、披萨等。

Shredded Pork with Garlic Sauce is a typical dish of Sichuan cuisine.

鱼香肉丝是川菜一道典型菜。

**be typical of** ...典型特点是

**e.g.**

This painting is typical of Van Gogh's early work.

这幅画是梵高早期的代表作。

Fast and convenient are typical of fast food.

快餐的特点是方便快捷。

**type n.** 类型

**typically ad.** 典型地; 代表性地

5. **eat out** to eat at a restaurant or at somebody else's home 出去吃

**Synonym** dine out

**Antonyms** eat in, dine in

**e.g.**

The average Americans probably eat out in fast food restaurants four to five

times a week.

普通美国民众一周光顾快餐店四至五次。

Judy used to eat out in the evening when her parents were on nightshifts.

以前，Judy 父母上夜班时，她常在外面吃晚饭。

**6. conclude v.** to decide sth. is true using the facts you know as a basis 推断出，断定

**e.g.**

So it can be concluded how popular fast food is in America.

因此，我们可以断定快餐在美国多么受欢迎。

The jury concluded from the evidence that she was guilty.

陪审团根据证据做出结论，认定他有罪。

**conclusion n.** 结论

**conclusive a.** 决定性的，结论性的

**7. convenience n.** the state of being suitable or opportune 方便，便利

**Synonym** utility

**e.g.**

They have to go out to eat greasy fast food because of its great convenience.

他们只有出去吃油腻的快餐，因为快餐方便、快捷。

It was a great convenience to go to the doctor if you live near the hospital.

住在医院附近，看病真是太方便了。

**convenient a.** 便利的，方便的

**conveniently ad.** 便利地，方便地

**8. devote oneself/sth to** to give up (oneself, one's time, energy, etc) to 奉献；致力于

**Synonyms** contribute... to, conduce... to

**e.g.**

Fast food can help them devote more energy to work.

快餐让他们有更多的精力投入到工作中去。

He was determined to devote himself to his nation and science.

他决心把毕生精力贡献给祖国和科学事业。

**9. deny vt.** to refuse to accept or believe or refuse to recognize or acknowledge 拒绝；拒绝承认

**Synonym** oppose, renounce, reject

**e.g.**

We can't deny the fact that fast food is tasty.

不可否认，快餐的确美味。

Few can deny LuXun's far-reaching influence on Chinese modern literature.

几乎没有人能否定鲁迅对中国现代文学的深远影响。

不要混淆 deny 和 refuse。deny 表示否认某事属实：The allegation was denied by government spokesmen (政府发言人否认了这一指控)。deny 亦表示拒绝给予某人某物：I never denied her anything. (我对她百依百顺)。refuse 表示有意不做或坚决表示不做某事：He refused to condemn them (他拒绝谴责他们)。refuse 亦表示拒绝接受别人主动给予的东西：The patient has the right to refuse treatment (病人有权拒绝接受治疗)。refuse 还可表示拒绝给予某人其所要之物或不允许某人做其想做之事：He can run to Dad for money if



I refuse him (如果我不给他钱, 他可以跑到爸爸那儿去要)。Deny 后接动名词, refuse 后接不定式。

**10. tasty a.** pleasing to the sense of taste, delicious 美味的, 可口的

**Synonyms** mouth-watering, savory, delicious

**e.g.**

My mother is skilled in preparing tasty dishes.

我妈妈很会做菜。

Freshly baked apple pie makes a tasty dessert.

新烤的苹果派是很可口的饭后点心。

**taste v & n.** 品尝; 口味

**e.g.**

Please taste the soup and see if it has enough salt.

请尝一口汤, 看盐是否合适。

He tasted the dish and found it quite tasty.

他尝了一下那道菜, 觉得很可口。

**11. relax oneself** to become less tense, less formal, or less restrained, and assume a friendlier manner 放松

**e.g.**

Customers can go there to enjoy good services and relax themselves.

顾客可以去那儿享受优质服务并得到放松。

We'll have a barbecue to relax ourselves this weekend.

这个周末我们要去烧烤, 放松一下。

**12. take away** to remove from a certain place, environment, or mental or emotional state or take from a person or place 拿开, 带走

**e.g.**

The food can either be eaten in the restaurants or be taken away back home.

顾客可以在快餐店里就餐, 也可将快餐带回家吃。

No government shall take away people the rights of receiving education.

任何政府也不能剥夺人们受教育的权利。

**13. regular a.** occurring at fixed intervals or conforming to a standard or pattern 定期的; 有规律的

**e.g.**

Regular and excessive consumption of fast food can have a serious effect on a person's health.

吃太多快餐会对人的身体健康产生严重的负面影响。

Taking regular physical exercise is good for our health.

经常锻炼对健康有益。

**regularly ad.** 有规律地; 定期地

**regularity n.** 规律性; 规则性

**14. excessive a.** beyond normal limits 过度的; 过分的

**Synonym** extravagant

**e.g.**

They complained about the excessive noise coming from the square dance.

他们抱怨广场舞发出的噪音太大。

Excessive alcohol consumption is harmful to health.

过度饮酒对健康有害。

**excessively ad.** 过度地；极度地

**excessiveness n.** 冗余

**15. consumption n.** the process of taking food into the body through the mouth or the act of consuming something 消费；耗尽

**Synonyms** exhaustion, expenditure

**e.g.**

The consumption of gold has increased sharply in recent years because of inflation.

近年来由于通货膨胀，黄金消费急剧增长。

The doctor suggested that he should cut down his daily consumption of food.

医生建议他减少每天摄入的食物量。

**consume v.** 消费；耗尽

**consumer n.** 消费者

**16.** The last sentence of Paragraph 5 “And their **efforts** should be **made** to change the situation in order to keep the food more nutritious and healthier.” can be paraphrased as follows:

Americans should try their best to change the situation in which they rely too much on fast food to make their food more nutritious and healthier.

**17. make efforts to do** to try to do 努力做某事

**e.g.**

Americans should make efforts to change the situation in order to keep the food more nutritious and healthier.

美国人应努力改变现状，使他们的饮食变得更有营养健康。

The young man has been making efforts to realize his music dream.

那个小伙子一直在努力实现他的音乐梦想。

## ***Get Relaxed***

### **Scripts**

#### **Chinese Food**

##### **Alison Gold**

I play bowling. I attend the party.

Then I hug. Then I'm hungry.

And I walk on the street, getting, getting, getting (gro) .

I see “Chao” by my right. I see food in the air. It's Chinese food, my favorite. So I'm getting, getting hungry.

I love Chinese food, you know that is true. I love fried rice. I love noodles. I love chow mein.

I love Chinese food, you know that is true.

I love fried rice. I love noodles. I love chow mein.

See the menu, they got broccoli. They love chicken, they make it spicy.  
You'll like it, because it's beautiful and tastes so good.  
I like egg roll and Wonton soup. It makes me feel so good. Chinese food.  
I love fried rice. I love noodles. I love chow mein.  
I love Chinese food, you know that is true.  
I love fried rice. I love noodles. I love chow mein.  
I like Chinese food and Wonton soup.  
Don't be a busy bee, because it's your fantasy.  
Eat Chinese food, egg roll and Chop suey.  
I use chopsticks to eat fried dumplings.  
Put in thick chili sauce, sugar and vinegar and make it sweet.

## Passage B

### ***I. Background information***

Some differences between Chinese and Western food



#### **Food preparation**

Chinese food is different from Western food by the way we prepare food before cooking. Chinese cut the ingredients in bite size then stir fry or steam the ingredients in short time while Westerners cook the ingredients in big pieces and cut the food on their plates with knives and forks.

中西餐在烹饪前准备食材的方式不同。中国人一般把食材切成能一口吃下去的小块，再短时间内翻炒或蒸煮，而西方人则在烹饪过程中将食材弄成大块，然后放到餐盘里用刀叉再切成小块吃。

#### **Ingredients and Condiments**

There are some ingredients or seasonings in Chinese cuisine which are seldom used in Western cuisine, like e.g. jelly fish, sea cucumber, shark fins, fish maw, bird's nest, bean curd (tofu), black bean sauce, soy sauce, etc. On the other hand, in Western cuisine herbs like rosemary, dill, oregano, thyme etc. are added. You would normally not find these

herbs in Chinese food. Chinese add ginger, spring onion, mint, coriander and white pepper. You can hardly find any traditional Chinese food that contains cheese, butter, cream or milk.

中国菜的一些原料和调味品在西方菜中很少用，比如：水母、海参、鲨鱼翅、鱼鳔、燕窝、豆腐、酱油、豆豉酱等。西方菜则往往会加入迷迭香、莳萝(小茴香)、牛至(墨角兰植物制成的调味品)、百里香等药草，在中国菜自然不会找到这些药草。中国菜会加入姜、葱、薄荷、香菜、白胡椒等佐料，却鲜见奶酪、黄油、奶油或牛奶等。

## II. Text division

Para.A	The introductory remarks.		
Para.B-E	The differences in four specific aspects between Chinese and Western dinner.	Para.B	The structures of dishes.
		Para.C	The procedures and ways of serving Western dinner.
		Para.D	The procedures and ways of serving Chinese dinner.
		Para.E	The differences in the position of the table where dishes are served.
Para.F	The conclusion.		

## Section Two

### Reading

#### Catching main ideas (2)

利用分类法能快速抓住文章的主旨大意，有效提高阅读效率，例一：

Nowadays, more and more people have books in their homes, but few of them really 'own' the books. In Professor Adler's opinion, there are three kinds of book owners. The first kind of owners have all the standard sets and best-sellers-books that are sold in very large numbers—unread, untouched. (These owners own only wood pulp and ink, not books.) Another kind of book owners have a great many books—a few of them read through, most of them dipped into, that is, most of the books are only read or studied for a short time or without much attention; but all of them as clean and shiny as the day they were bought. (These persons would probably like to make books their own, but are restrained by a false respect for their physical appearance.)

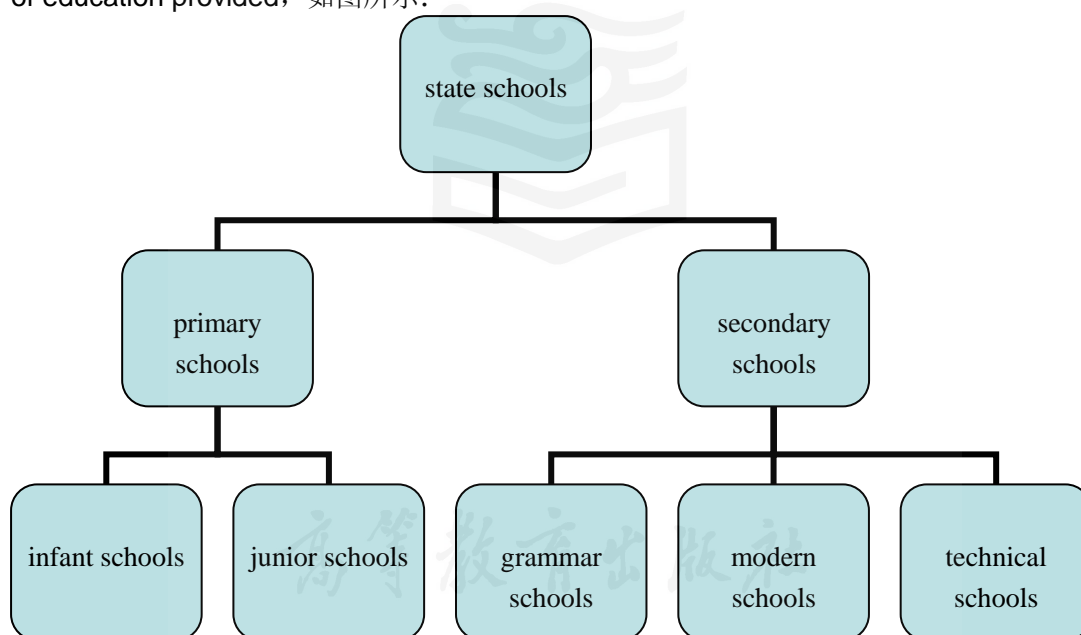
The final kind of book owners, however, have a few books or many, every one of them do geared (having the corners of the pages bent down with use, like a dog's ears) and dilapidated (broken and old, falling to pieces), shaken and loosened by continual use, marked and scribbled in from front to back. (These people really own books.)

根据范例所示，我们得知作者将有书的人划为三类，其分类根据是划一的，分出的三类 book owners 互相排除，没有重叠。作者还通过使用“the first kind...another kind...the final kind...”等这些转换词语，有机地围绕主题“There are three kinds of book owners”，介绍了三种不同类型的“owners”。因此只需抓住“There are three kinds of book owners”，“the first kind...another kind...the final kind...”几句话便可掌握这篇短文的中心大意了。

例二：

In Britain, state schools can be classified according to the age range of the pupils and the type of education provided. Basically, there are two types of schools: primary and secondary. Primary schools cater to (满足需要) children age 5-11 and secondary school ages 11-16 (and up to 19). Primary schools can be sub-divided into infant schools (for age 5-7) and junior schools (for age 7-11). Secondary schools may be one type for all abilities, viz. (即) comprehensive schools; most secondary schools are of this kind. Alternatively, pupils may be grouped according to their ability and selected by means of an examination at age 11 (known as the “11-plus exam”). Thus, grammar schools cater to those with academic ability; modern schools for those with less academic ability; and technical schools for those with more practical skills.

根据文章可知,英国的 state schools 分类的标准是: the age range of the pupils and the type of education provided, 如图所示:



分类法是作者将写作内容进行分类说明的一种写作手法分类就是按照事物的不同特点将它们划成多个类别。事物可以按照不同的标准进行分类,标准则取决于分类的成因。例如,在分析某系学生的构成情况时,如果了解他们的学习情况可以将他们根据考试成绩划分为若干组。不管分类的目的是什么,分类的标准必须具有普适性和排他性,也就是说分类标准必须覆盖分类样本集中的所有样本元素,而且样本集中的任一元素只能隶属于分类标准项次中的唯一一项。例如,把学生分成男生、女生和运动员是不合适的,这一标准违反了排他性原则,因为某个学生可能是男生的同时又是运动员,他占据了两个分类项次。

常用表示分类的名词:

kind, sort, type, group, classification, category, member division/branch

常用表示分类的动词和动词短语:

class, classify, divide, categorize, group, place, arrange,

belong to, fall into,

there be, contain,

consist of, comprise, include, be composed of, be comprised of,

make up, constitute, compose.

## Writing

## A notice

**A notice** is a sheet of paper giving written or printed information, usually put in a public place. The purpose of a notice is to inform the public of certain events or activities, such as a meeting, a party, a movie, a contest and so on. 通知通常是上级对下级、一单位告知其他单位或个人某种信息而使用的一种应用文,其目的是用来告知大家已经发生的或者将要发生的事情,比如:会议、晚会、电影和比赛等。通知的语言要简洁明了,条理清晰,准确无误,特别是时间概念很重要,必须写得十分明确,不容丝毫含糊。

书信格式的通知一般由标题(heading)、正文(body)、落款(Signature)、日期(date)四部分组成,内容一般包括时间、地点和活动说明等。一般情况下,标题 Notice 或 An Announcement 应写在书面通知的首行中央。应明确写出发出通知的单位(落款: Signature)和日期(date)。通知的发布单位常写在正文结束的右下角,发布通知的日期一般写在通知正文的右上角(在 Notice 的下一行)。正文内容应包括活动的时间、地点、内容说明及参与活动的人员。口头通知和书面通知都是宣布即将发生的事情及其具体内容,因而多用将来时,一般用祈使句来强调。

### Sample

<b>Notice</b>		
<b>Dec. 5, 2014</b>		
<b>All professors, associate professors and lecturers are requested to meet in the college conference room, Wednesday, Dec. 8, at 3:00 pm to discuss the new direction in adult education.</b>		
<b>Department</b>	<b>The</b>	<b>International</b>
		<b>Education</b>

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 词性转换翻译法(3) 副词转译成名词、动词和形容词

英语中的副词多数时候是在形容词之后加上后缀-ly 形成的。因此,英语中的形容词和副词之间有着天然的联系,英语中有多少形容词,相应地就有多少副词;形容词有多少变化,副词就会跟着有多少变化。由此,与汉语相比,英语中的副词种类更多,使用频率更高,句中的位置也更加灵活多变。另外,由于汉语是“具有动态趋向的语言”,而英语是“具有静态趋向的语言”。因此,英语使用具有“静态特征”的副词的机会自然要比汉语更多一些。

考虑到英语里的副词种类繁多,使用频率很高,在句中的位置也灵活多变,在将英语中的副词译成汉语时,必须综合分析该副词同句中其它成分之间的修饰和被修饰的关系,正确理解其含义,再根据汉语的习惯表达进行灵活处理。英译汉时可根据其意义和修饰关系,分别将英语的副词译成汉语的名词、动词或形容词。而汉译英时则正好相反,往往可以考虑将名词、动词或形容词翻译成英语的副词。下面以英译汉为例,简要介绍一下副词的处理技巧。

#### 1. 副词转译成名词

英语中修饰形容词的副词,如果翻译成汉语后与汉语的形容词搭配不通畅的话,可以考虑将



其转译成汉语的名词，再与形容词搭配。如：

Mother had always told me that poor people were **basically kind**. I didn't think this man would want to hurt me.

妈妈总是对我说，穷人的本质是好的，所以我想这个人不会害我。

**Originally** Ingrid Bergman was from Sweden.

英格丽褒曼的原籍是瑞典。

The paper said **editorially** that China has successfully survived a worldwide financial crisis.

该报的社论说，中国成功地承受住了一场波及全球的金融危机。

Finally, a youngish, **mathematically** minded customer got out a piece of paper and a pencil.

最后，顾客中一个年纪轻一些、有数学头脑的人拿出了纸和笔。

He is **physically** weak but **mentally** sound.

他身体虽弱，但精神很好。

## 2. 副词转译成形容词

He was **deeply** impressed by what they did at the critical moment.

他们在关键时刻的行为给他留下了深刻的印象。

King George would move out of England and settle **peaceably** in Delaware.

乔治国王离开英国，在特拉华过平静的生活。

He **routinely** radioed another agent on the ground.

他跟另一个地勤人员进行了例行的无线电联络。

The English language changed **subtly** and **pervasively**.

英语的变化很敏感，很普遍。

## 3. 副词转译成动词

Although he has been **back** for over a month, I haven't seen him yet.

尽管他已经回来一个多月了，但我还没有见到他。

The American firm was **unknowingly** advertising that "You could use no finer diaper at your dinner table."

这家美国公司**没有察觉到**它的广告是在说“在餐桌上没有比这更好的尿布了”。

I must be **off** now, for my sister is expecting me. 我姐姐在等我，我得走了。

# Section Three

## How to order meals

### Common sense of ordering food

There is always both an a la carte(按照餐牌点菜)and a set menu option(套餐)offered in a Western-style restaurant. The French language phrase "a la carte" means "according to the menu". You can choose your favorites from the a la carte menu. A formal meal can consist of three to four courses or even more. A menu with four courses is called a four-course menu.

The usage of food terminologies(n.专门用语)varies from place to place. Americans use the word "entree" to refer to the main course of a dinner. However, entree refers to a dish served before the main course in France and England. The main course is the heaviest and most complex dish in a meal. Steaks(n.肉排), pasta(n.面条), chicken and fish fillets



are the most common choices of the main course. Tea and coffee are only served after the dessert instead of during the meal. Don't forget to ask for the bill after enjoying your meal! You can say "Check, please." or "Give me the bill please."

### **Situational dialogue**

Ordering food in a restaurant

S: Sherlock            E: Evangeline

E: Welcome to the restaurant. Here's the menu.

S: Let me see.

E: May I have your order now?

S: Do you have some recommendations?

E: Steak in our restaurant is famous. It has quite a large serving.

S: Steak sounds good to me. OK, steak, please.

E: Sure. How would you like it to be done?

S: Medium, please.

E: What would you like for staple food? We have French baguette, croissant and toast.

S: I don't like bread. The steak is enough.

E: OK. Would you like a drink?

S: Water is OK.

E: Cold or warm?

S: Warm is better for me.

E: Would you like a dessert?

S: Er, a tiramisu and an egg tart, please.

E: Sorry, the egg tart is finish. It is too hot.

S: What? What can I have?

E: Pudding is great. We have lots of kinds of pudding. It is a signature.

S: OK, a tiramisu and a mango pudding, please.

E: The weather is also too hot, what about an ice cream?

S: Yeah, it is sounds great. A chocolate ice cream, please.

E: Anything else?

S: A vegetable soup, please.

E: OK, just wait a few minutes please. They'll be ready soon.

S: Thanks.

E: My pleasure. I hope you'll enjoy them.

---

## ● Suggested Versions

### **Passage A**

#### **美国的快餐**

提到快餐，大多数人立刻会想到诸如麦当劳、肯德基、星巴克等著名快餐品牌。这些快餐店大都按一个模式经营。通常有一个很长的柜台，上面摆放了各种可用的物品，柜台背后

有几个店员为顾客服务。顾客在每个店员前面排队点餐。然后他们可以很快得到所点的菜品并放在托盘里端到桌子上，顺便可以拿上吸管、番茄酱、泡菜和纸巾等。

美国人非常喜欢快餐，在美国快餐店随处可见。快餐店提供的典型快餐食品包括汉堡、三明治、炸鸡、披萨、热狗、饮料等，顾客可选择他们喜欢的任何食品。普通美国民众一周光顾快餐店四至五次。他们在快餐上的花费超过他们在高等教育、购置电脑、看电影以及购买录像带和音乐唱片方面的支出。预计 2014 年全美快餐店的营业额将打破 6834 亿美元。由此，我们可以断定快餐在美国多么受欢迎。

快餐在美国受欢迎主要有两个方面的原因。首先，美国的生活方式建立在速度和效率上。美国人对速度的追求不仅改变了他们的饮食和饮食方式，也改变了他们对饮食的看法。饮食的品质变得不再像以前那样重要。大多数美国人工作忙得根本没有时间和精力为家人准备营养的膳食。他们只有出去吃油腻的快餐，因为快餐方便、快捷，可以节省时间，让他们有更多的精力投入到工作中去。或许这就是为什么像麦当劳那样的快餐会如此流行的原因。

另外快餐还有一些其他的优势。我们不可否认，快餐的确美味。并且快餐店里的环境也很舒适、干净、整洁。顾客可以去那儿享受优质服务并得到放松。再者，顾客可以在快餐店里就餐，也可将快餐带回家吃。

然而，众所周知吃太多快餐会对人的身体健康产生严重的负面影响。经常吃快餐的人更容易患肥胖症、糖尿病、心脏病以及癌症。快节奏的生活不仅使美国人失去了烹饪可口饭菜的时间，也让他们失去了真正品尝一餐美味佳肴的能力。如果美国要成为一个为了他们的未来而改变生活和饮食方式的民族，就要努力改变现状，使他们的饮食变得更有营养健康。

## Passage B

### 中西餐对比

中餐和西餐之间的差异很大，他们在进餐顺序、餐具、上菜方式和菜品构成方面都不同。

西餐的进餐顺序通常是开胃菜(前菜)、主菜、甜品和咖啡，而中餐的进餐顺序是茶水、凉菜、热菜、主食、汤和水果。

西餐中的前菜一般是蔬菜沙拉或汤。典型的汤如：奶油蘑菇汤、墨西哥辣椒牛肉汤、法式洋葱汤、番茄浓汤、海鲜杂烩汤、牛肉清汤等。主菜中最典型的是里脊牛肉、鸡或鱼。主菜之后，就是甜品了，甜品可以是冰淇淋、蛋糕、水果和酥皮糕点。餐桌清理后，就上咖啡了，通常这是西餐的最后一道菜，与中餐文化大不相同。

吃中餐时，首先会上茶水。中餐的前菜通常是凉菜，主材是已经煮熟的蔬菜或肉类随后冷却而成。凉菜里通常会用到酱油、醋和辣椒油等调料。中国的饮食文化里，如果几个人聚在一张桌子吃饭，可能会点很多菜。中国菜的种类多得不胜枚举。中国有八大地方菜系，每种菜系都有自己独特的一系列名菜。吃中餐时通常会喝点啤酒、葡萄酒或白酒。中国人所指的主食是米饭、面条或馒头。按照中国传统的营养学观点，这些主食有营养。肉食不能平衡营养，所以，中国人不把肉类作为主食。热菜之后是汤。中餐里最典型的甜点是水果，高档餐厅往往会把几种水果拼成美丽的形状放在一个大盘子里。最讨人喜欢的水果可能是西瓜和梨，餐后吃这些水果会让人口感清爽、脾胃舒服。

中餐和西餐最大的区别是上菜时菜品摆放位置的不同。西餐将菜品放到每个人的盘子里，所以每个人都有一个大盘子。在西餐厅中，每个人为自己点三道菜。而中餐则将所有的

菜肴放在一张桌子的中间，供大家分享，每个人面前有个小盘子，放他从共享的菜肴里夹出的菜。进餐时，将桌子中央盘子里的菜夹到自己盘子里享用，吃多少夹多少。对凉菜同样如此。由于中餐的主食是米饭或面条，所以每个人通常单独用一个小碗盛米饭或面条。

伴随国际交流的迅速发展，东西方人都在竭力适应不同的饮食文化。

## ●Suggested Keys and Scripts

### **Get Started**

1. C 2. D

### **Reading for Meaning**

**Task 1** 1. A 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. D

**Task 2** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

#### **Task 3**

**1. Fast food restaurant:** Dicos 德克士, Pizza Hut 必胜客, houcalle 豪客来, Subway 赛百味, PAPA JOHN'S 棒约翰, Burger King 汉堡王, Barbera 巴贝拉, Beck Burger 贝克汉堡。

**2. Typical fast food:** sandwich 三明治, fried chicken 炸鸡, pizza 披萨, big Mac 巨无霸, Pie 派, cod fish burger combo 深海鳕鱼堡, New Orleans roasted burger 新奥尔良烤鸡腿堡, hot dog, 热狗; **Side item(精选配餐):** corn salad 玉米沙拉, French fries 薯条, mashed potato 土豆泥, egg & vegetable 芙蓉鲜蔬汤; **snack(美味小食):** original recipe 吮指原味鸡, hot wing 香辣鸡翅, pop corn chicken 鸡米花, cod fish finger 深海鳕鱼条; **dessert and drink:** Ice cream cone 脆皮甜筒, chocolate Sundae 巧克力圣代, egg tart 葡式蛋挞, grass jelly milk tea 仙草奶茶, classic milk tea 经典奶茶, citron tea 香柚蜂蜜茶。

**3. Chinese homely dishes:** bitter melon in sauce 凉拌苦瓜, Beijing roast duck 北京烤鸭, sweet and sour ribs 糖醋排骨, diced chicken with peanuts 宫保鸡丁, bean sauce tofu 麻婆豆腐, spicy boiled meat slice 水煮肉片。

**4. Western-style fast food tableware:** dish 碟, tea-pot 茶壶, tea set 茶具, tea tray 茶盘, coffee pot 咖啡壶, coffee cup 咖啡杯, cup 杯子, plate 盘子, fruit plate 水果盘, service tray 托盘, knife 刀, fork 叉, spoon 勺, toothpick 牙签, straw 吸管, stirrer 搅拌棒, bottle opener 开瓶器, paper towel 纸巾, napkin 餐巾。

**5. Condiments(调味品):** sugar 糖, brown sugar 黄糖, rock sugar 冰糖, soy sauce 酱油, vinegar 醋, salt 盐, ginger 生姜, garlic 蒜, chilli 辣椒, cooking wine 料酒, black pepper 胡椒, spicy powder, 五香粉, gourmet powder 味精, oyster sauce 蚝油, olive oil 橄榄油, sesame oil 芝麻油, rapeseed oil 菜子油, sesame oil 香油, butter 黄油, cheese 奶酪, Jam 果酱, chili sauce 辣椒酱, mustard 芥菜, ketchup 番茄酱。

### **Reading for Language**

**Task 4** 1. are displayed 2. similarities 3. typically 4. conclusion 5. taste 6. excessively 7. consumption 8. be denied 9. regularly 10. convenience

**Task 5** 1. eat out 2. devote ... to 3. take away  
4. relax themselves 5. make efforts

- Task 6** 1. will take 2. would go 3. has been 4. taught 5. was eating  
6. is becoming/has become 7. has been staying 8. had created  
9. bring 10. will/shall have saved

## ***Reading for Comprehension***

- Task 1** 1. Tea 2. soup 3. warm dishes 4. fillet beef 5. dessert

- Task 2** 1. eight 2. noodles or buns 3. vegetable salad 4. chicken or fish 5. balanced

## ***Listening & Speaking***

- Task 1** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D

### **Scripts:**

1. M: What's matter with you? You don't look well.  
W: Er, I'm OK, really. It's somewhat hot and humid. I'd like an ice-cream cone.  
Q: How is the woman feeling?
2. M: Excuse me. Can you tell me how much big Mac is?  
W: Yes, it's nine pounds fifteen.  
Q: How much is big Mac?
3. M: What do you think of the strawberry pie, I made it all by myself.  
W: Very delicious. Even my mother can't match it.  
Q: What does the woman mean?
4. W: Excuse me, Sir. Can you tell me how I can get to Pizza Hut nearby?  
M: Go down the street and turn left at the corner. You can't miss it.  
Q: Where does the conversation most probably take place?
5. M: Hurry up, Jenny. Drink your coffee. The plane is taking off in ten minutes. We'll be late.  
W: I can't finish it. It's much too hot for me to drink.  
Q: Where are they?

- Task 2** 1. American Special 2. Apple pie 3. Black coffee 4. \$40 5. In cash

### **Scripts:**

Customer=C Waiter=W

C: Waiter, please!

W: Yes, Madam. Can I help you?

C: Can I have the menu, please?

W: Of course. Here you are. What would you like to have, Madam?

C: Let me see. Well, I'd like an American Special.

W: All right! Would you like some desserts?

C: Apple pie will be ok.

W: What would you like to drink?

C: A cup of black coffee, please.

W: Any thing else?

C: No, that's all for today.

W: OK. Just a moment.

W: Madam, here is the food you ordered. Enjoy your meal.

C: Would you please bring me the bill?

W: Sure.

C: So, how much is it?

W: \$40 altogether. Do you pay in cash or with credit card?

C: In cash.

W: Thanks.

**Task 3** Question 1: What is the address of the restaurant?

Question 2: What are the working hours of the restaurant?

Question 3: What are the specialties of the restaurant?/ What are the specialties offered by the restaurant?

Answer1: MARE.

Answer 2: 2003-4-6.

Answer 3: With credit card or in cash.

Scripts:

Question 1: What is the name of the restaurant?

Question 2: When did the restaurant run its business?

Question 3: How can you pay for your meal?

#### **Task 4**

#### **Enjoy your time**

### **English Song**

The Food Song-Barbra Lica

食物歌-芭芭拉莉卡

Hey, I had a bad day,  
and I wonder how it tastes, so I ate...  
And then I served myself a second plate.

Hey, I had a bad week,  
and now I wonder if it's sweet, so I'll eat,  
Cause I deserve to give myself a treat.

Sadness taste like French fries,  
And anger tastes like wine.  
They're only grapes but give them time.

Hey, I had a bad night,  
so I wrapped it up in pie, and let it bake,  
so all my feelings taste like tenderflake.  
Oh joy, my mom just called,  
and she's appalled because my dad don't wanna spoon.  
I'll take that spoon, and put some ice cream on my afternoon.

But guilty tastes like noodles.  
Lonely tastes like bread.  
But toast can make a loyal friend~

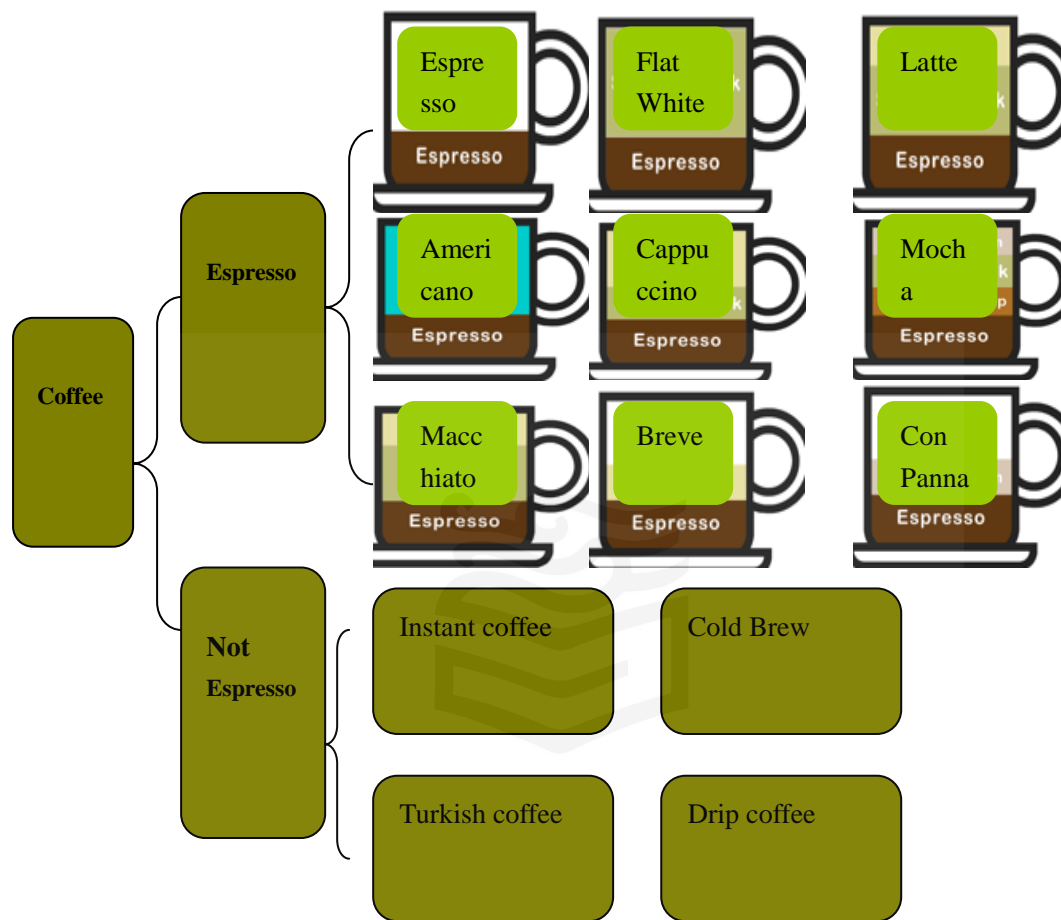
Everything is wonderful, yeah.  
So walk it off, walk it off, circle the block.  
The cookies and cream are starting to talk to me.  
I'm just crazy!  
Bur crazy tastes so good, crazy tastes so nice.  
Crazy tastes like never-have-to-go-outside.

Here we go now

Hey, I had a bad day so I ate it all.  
Hey, I had a bad day so I ate it all.  
Hey, I had a bad day so I ate it all, mmmmmm ...  
Hey, I had a bad day, and I'm stuffed.

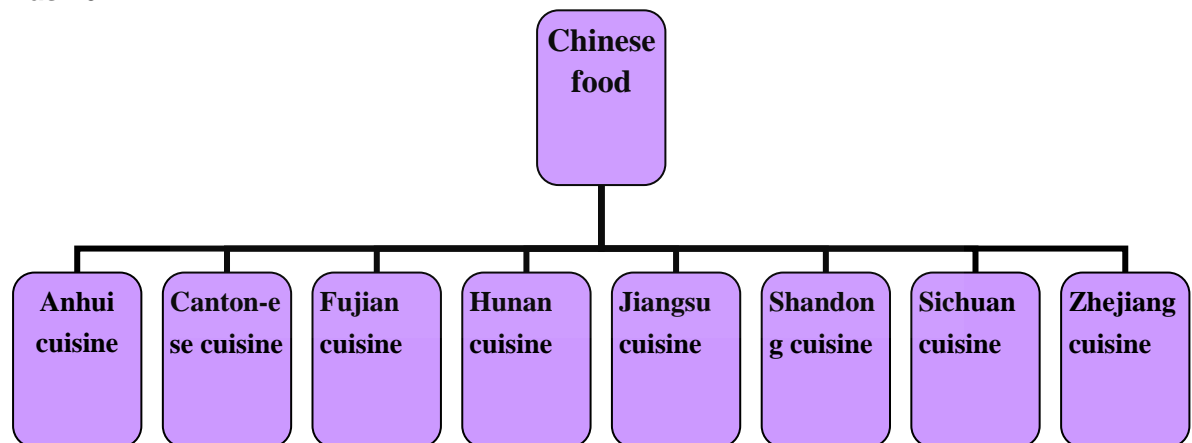
## Task 5

高等教育出版社



高等教育出版社

### Task 6



### Task 7

1. live → to live    2. were → was    3. has → have  
 4. as → to    5. killer → killers    6. is → are  
 7. increase → increases

### Task 8

Notice

August 7<sup>th</sup>, 2014

A pre-service training for new employees will be held in Chongqing from August 10<sup>th</sup> to August 15<sup>th</sup>. The training place will be in Room 8 on the second



### Task 9

1. 每天清晨那家餐馆的服务员打开窗户让新鲜空气**进来**。
2. 他们**落后**于新员工培训计划。
3. 昨晚谁邀请你**出去**到星巴克喝饮料了？
4. 新菜品打折活动已**结束**了。
5. 在过去的十年中，美国快餐连锁店在全球有了**很大**的增长。
6. 汉堡王开发的一道新菜品给我留下了**深刻**的印象。
7. 快餐企业要求员工给所有顾客**平等**的待遇。
8. 美国人以前总是和家人分享在家里准备好的**新鲜**、健康美食
9. 这家报纸的**社论**说，我们不应该忽视快餐对健康的严重影响。
10. 吃沙拉的时候，挑出里面高热量的成分比如炸鸡是**明智**的。

### Task10

1. 提到快餐，大多数人立刻会想到诸如麦当劳、肯德基等著名快餐品牌。
2. 普通美国民众一周可能光顾快餐店四至五次。
3. 美国人对速度的追求不仅改变了他们的饮食和饮食方式，也改变了他们对饮食的看法。
4. 大多数美国人忙得根本没有时间和精力为家人准备营养的膳食。
5. 众所周知，吃太多快餐会对人的身体健康产生严重的负面影响。经常吃快餐的人更容易患肥胖症、糖尿病、心脏病以及癌症。

## Workshop

### Task 1

Picture 1. **order herself**

Picture 2. **a bottle of red wine**

Picture 3. **specialties**

Picture 4. **drinking a toast**

.

## Task 2

1. Read through the menu.
2. Inquire some information on starter, main course, dessert and drink.
3. Order what you like.
4. Enjoy what you order.
5. Check out at the counter.



高等教育出版社

# Unit Seven

## Sharing Festival Fun

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	religion,intention, inspiring, reflect, spiritual, significant, undoubtedly, integration, emerge, complain,			
	pay one's respects to, get/ be involved in, be restricted to, come up with, be related to			
	Passive Voice			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	Festival celebrations	Clicking specific information (1)	A poster	Transferring part of speech(4)
<b>Workshops</b>	1. Talking about how to celebrate the Spring Festival		2. Talking about how to celebrate Christmas	

#### Section One









#### Passage A

#### I. Background information



A festival can be a program of cultural events, celebrations or entertainments conducted by a person, group, organization or association outdoors. These would also include such things as concerts, fairs, carnivals or a circus. Being at a festival is like standing inside the mind of a culture. Now, let's enjoy some festivals in West countries and China!

节日是由个人、团体、组织或协会组织举行的集文化娱乐及庆典于一身的户外活动。活动包括音乐会、展览会、嘉年华以及马戏团表演等。参加节日庆典犹如沐浴于特有文化氛围之中，让我们一起感受中西方节日吧！

			
Christmas Day <b>December 25</b>	Halloween <b>October 31</b>	Valentine's Day <b>February 14</b>	Thanksgiving Day <b>The Fourth Thursday in November</b>
			
Spring Festival <b>January 1</b> <b>Lunar Calendar</b>	Mid-Autumn Festival <b>August 15</b> <b>Lunar Calendar</b>	Dragon-Boat Festival <b>May 5</b> <b>Lunar Calendar</b>	Lantern Festival <b>January 15</b> <b>Lunar Calendar</b>

- Christmas or Christmas Day is a holiday celebrating the birth of Jesus. It is traditionally celebrated on December 25<sup>th</sup>. Aspects of celebration may include

gift-giving, decorating Christmas trees, display of Nativity sets, church attendance, the Father Christmas/Santa Claus myth, and family gatherings.

圣诞或圣诞节是庆祝耶稣诞生的节日，通常在 12 月 25 日。圣诞节庆祝活动包括赠送礼物、装饰圣诞树、摆耶稣系列雕像、参加教堂活动、讲圣诞老人的传说和家庭聚会等。

- Halloween is on the 31<sup>st</sup> of October, which is a special holiday for children in the US and Canada. In the evening, the children visit neighborhood homes in their costumes. They knock on doors and shout, "Trick or treat!"

万圣节在 10 月 31 日，是美国与加拿大孩子们的节日。那天夜晚，化好妆的孩子们敲打邻居家的大门并大声喊：“不招待我的话，就对你恶作剧”！

- Valentine's Day is a romantic day for lovers. It is on the 14<sup>th</sup> of February. Young people like it very much. They are happy and busy buying chocolates and special cards for their lovers.

2 月 14 日的情人节是情人们的浪漫日子。年青人很喜欢过情人节，他们愉快地送巧克力与卡片给情人作为礼物。

- Thanksgiving Day, which is on the fourth Thursday in November, is traditionally a day for families and friends to get together for a special meal. The meal often includes a turkey, potatoes, cranberry sauce, gravy, pumpkin pie, and vegetables. Thanksgiving Day is a time for many people to give thanks to God for what they have.

11 月份的最后一个星期四是感恩节。节日那天，家人和朋友聚在一起吃大餐。传统的食物有：火鸡、土豆、红莓酱、肉汁、南瓜饼及蔬菜等。对多数人来讲，感恩节也是感谢上帝所赐他们所拥有的日子。

- The Spring Festival is Chinese New Year — the first day of the lunar calendar. The Spring Festival is a significant festival for family reunion. On the Spring Festival Eve, all members of family get together to have a big dinner, and watch the Spring Festival Gala together on CCTV.

春节是农历新年的第一天。春节是家人团聚的重要节日，除夕夜，全家人一起吃团圆大餐，围坐在一起看中央电视台春节联欢晚会。

- The Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the most traditional Chinese holidays. It is held on the 15th of August according to lunar calendar. Chinese legends say that the moon is at its brightest and roundest on this day. On that day people eat moon cakes.

农历 8 月 15 中秋节是中国最传统的节日之一。传说那天夜晚的月亮是最圆最亮的，中秋节人们通常要吃月饼。

- The Dragon-Boat Festival, which is on May 5 according to lunar calendar, is the oldest festival in China. The traditions are racing dragon boats and eating zongzi – a kind of rice wrapped in bamboo leaves. The races have captured the interests of people from all over the world. On Dragon-Boat Festival there are nearly 60 dragon boat races held outside of China every year.

农历 5 月 5 日是中国最古老的节日——端午节。赛龙舟和吃粽子(一种包在竹叶中的米食)是传统庆祝方式，这种竞赛激起了世界各地人们的兴趣，每年的端午节那天，有近 60 场龙舟赛在中国境外城市举行。

- The Lantern Festival falls on the 15th day of the lunar New Year. Yuan Xiao is a

traditional food for the Lantern Festival, which is also called as Tang Yuan in southern areas. Red lanterns and colorful lanterns are hanged everywhere on windows, gates, shops, trees and the streets. In the evening of the festival, people carry their own lanterns through the streets to join in the carnival with kinds of performances such as lion dance and dragon dance.

元宵节在农历新年的 15 号。传统食物是元宵，南方人称其为汤圆。各家各户的窗台、大门上、商店里、树上及大街小巷都挂满了以红色为主的彩灯。晚上，人们提着灯上街参加游行活动，如舞狮舞龙表演等。

## II. Outline

Para. 1	The original ways of celebrating festivals.
Para. 2	The ways of celebrating festivals being changing.
Para. 3—4	The commercialization of celebrating festivals.
Para. 5	The different ways of celebration, but the same significance for everyone.

## III. Detailed study of Passage A

**1. intention** n. an act or instance of determining mentally upon some action or result 目的，意图

**Synonyms** aim purpose

**e.g.**

The original intention of holding them was to inspire religious feelings in various ways.

庆祝节日的初衷就是以各种方式激发宗教情感。

I have an intention of reading many books during summer vacation.

我打算暑假期间多阅读些书。

**intend** v. 意欲，计划

**intentional** a. 有意的，故意的

**2. religious** a. concerned with religion or the church 宗教的

**e.g.**

Most festivals have a religious origin.

大多数节日都起源于宗教。

Thanksgiving in the United States is not only a religious festival but also a gala day.

感恩节在美国不仅仅是一个宗教节日，也是狂欢的节日。

**religion** n. 宗教

**religiously** ad. 笃信地，虔诚地

**3. inspiring** a. stimulating or exalting to the spirit 鼓舞人心的

**Synonym** encouraging

**e.g.**

Fairs were also held where certain influential figures gave inspiring speeches with plays and dance dramas being conducted in honor of the festival's founder.



集会也同样举行，在此，一些有影响力的人物发表鼓舞人心的演说，表演戏剧和舞剧以纪念节日的创始人。

We can still remember the inspiring talk he gave us last time.

他上次做的鼓舞人心的报告，我们仍记忆犹新。

**inspire v.** 鼓舞； 激励

**inspired a.** 有雄心壮志的

**inspiration n.** 鼓舞人心的人或事

4. The last sentence of Paragraph 1 "Its aim was to inspire the individual into thoughts and acts of goodness and to make the individual reflect on his past behavior." can be paraphrased as follows:

Originally there were two purposes of festivals' celebration. One was to encourage the participants to consider and practice more charities. Another was to make them think over what they had done in the past.

5. **reflect (on) v.** to think carefully, especially about possibilities and opinions 反思，反省

**Synonym** deliberate

**e.g.**

Its aim was to inspire the individual into thoughts and acts of goodness and to make the individual reflect on his past behavior.

其目的是为了激励人们思考、鼓励人们做善事，并使人们反省自己过去的行为。

You should calm down to reflect on your own errors and draw some experiences.

你该静下心来好好反省你自己的错误，从而总结经验。

**reflection n.** 反映；（关于某课题的）思考

**reflective a.** 反射的，反映的； 反省性的； （指人、心情等）深思熟虑的

6. **spiritual a.** relating to people's thoughts and beliefs, rather than to their bodies and physical surroundings. 精神的

**e.g.**

There is nothing spiritual or religious in this aspect of the festival though it may involve paying some respect to God.

尽管这个节日可能涉及拜神，但在庆祝方式上面已经失去了精神或宗教色彩。

The Spring Festival Gala is a spiritual feast for Chinese.

春节联欢晚会是中国人除夕夜的精神大餐。

**spirit n.** 精神，心灵

**spirituality n.** 精神性，灵性

7. **pay one's respects to** to visit sb. or show respects to 拜访，拜望；祭拜

**e.g.**

Yesterday the new teachers paid their respects to our headmaster after meeting.

昨天会后，新教师拜访了我校校长。

Many people go to the Babaoshan Revolutionary Cemetery to pay their respects to the revolutionary martyrs on the Tomb-sweeping Festival.

清明节，许多人到八宝山革命公墓祭奠革命烈士。

8. **get/be involved in** to participate in or touch on 参与；涉及到

**e.g.**

The colorful festivals have got more people involved in.



丰富多彩的节日吸引了越来越多的人参与其中。

In addition to my studies, I got involved in many extracurricular activities this semester.

这学期除了学习以外，我还参加了许多课外活动。

**9. significant a.** important or noticeable 有意义的；重要的

**Synonyms** major chief

**e.g.**

Many groups and communities have their own specific festivals involving significant ceremonial elements.

许多群体和社区都有自己特定的、涉及重大仪式元素的节日。

Easter is not only the oldest, but also one of the most significant Christian holidays.

复活节不仅是最古老，也是最有意义的基督教节日之一。

**signify v.** 表示...的意思；意味

**significance n.** 意义；重要性

**10.** The second sentence of Paragraph 3 "However, as the world is increasingly getting more globalized, many festivals which were once restricted to specific communities are widely acceptable by others." can be paraphrased as follows:

Nowadays, with the globalization taking place, many people begin to celebrate festivals which were once accepted by other cultures.

**11. be restricted to** to be kept within certain limits; be limited to 仅限于

**e.g.**

However, as the world is increasingly getting more globalized, many festivals which were once restricted to specific communities are widely acceptable by others.

然而，随着世界全球化进程的日益加快，许多曾局限于特定社区的节日现被其他人广泛接受。

Driving speed in cities is restricted to 30 miles per hour.

在城里开车，速度不得超过每小时 30 英里。

**12. undoubtedly ad.** with certainty 毋庸置疑地

**e.g.**

Undoubtedly, this promotes national integration, social communication and harmony.

毫无疑问，这促进了民族融合、社会的交流与和谐。

"Transformers: Age of Extinction " is undoubtedly one of the most exciting movies in summer vacation.

《变形金刚 4：绝迹重生》无疑是暑期最精彩的电影之一。

**doubt v. & n.** 怀疑，疑虑

**undoubted a.** 无疑的；不容置疑的

**13. integration n.** the act of combining or adding parts to make a unified whole 融合

**Synonym** coalition

**e.g.**

Weightlifting is an event of the integration of strength and technique.

举重是一项需要力量和技术相结合的运动项目。

The aim of the negotiation between the two countries was to promote their closer economic integration.

两国谈判的目的是进一步促进经济一体化。

**integrate v.** 使一体化；使整合

**integrative a.** 综合的；一体化的

**14. come up with** to think of or suggest 提出; 想出

**e.g.**

As the number of people willing to consume increases every year, business organizations come up with more ideas to meet them.

随着消费者数量每年增多, 商家们就想出了更多的主意来满足他们的需要。

It was very intelligent of her to come up with such a splendid idea.

她真聪明, 能想出这样的一个好创意。

**15. emerge v.** to come out into view 出现, 呈现

**Synonyms** appear, come into being

**e.g.**

There emerge the rich variety of greeting cards, plenty of specialty items related to a particular festival.

各种各样丰富的贺卡、许多与特定节日相关的特色货品相继出现。

If the economy goes on like this, another crisis will emerge soon.

如果经济继续这样下去, 还将出现新的危机。

**emergence n.** 出现, 呈现

**16. be related to** to be connected or associated to 与——有关

**e.g.**

Population is closely and inseparably related to economic and social development.

人口与经济、社会发展密不可分。

Detectives have read through all the documents related to this case.

侦探们费力地阅读了所有有关此案的文件。

**17. complain (of/about sth or sb.) v.** to express dissatisfaction, pain, uneasiness or unhappiness 抱怨

**Synonym** grumble

**e.g.**

If it keeps businessmen and a growing number of customers happy, and if it causes no trouble or harm to others, who can complain?

如果它能使商人和日益增多的消费者高兴, 而且它并没有造成任何麻烦或伤害, 那么谁会抱怨呢?

Yesterday Mr. White complained about the quality of the wirings to the manager of this shop.

昨天, 怀特先生向该店经理投诉了电器质量问题。

**complaint n.** 抱怨; 投诉

## **Get Relaxed**

### **Remarks by the President at the National Thanksgiving Turkey Pardon**

Well, good afternoon, everybody. (Turkey gobbles.) (Laughter.) They say that life is all about second chances. And this November, I could not agree more. (Laughter.) So in the spirit of the season, I have one more gift to give, and it goes to a pair of turkeys named Cobbler and Gobbler. The American people have spoken, and these birds are moving forward. (Turkey gobbles.) (Laughter.) I love this bird. (Laughter.) Now, I joke, but for the first time in our history, the winners of the White House Turkey Pardon were chosen through a highly competitive online vote. And once again, Nate Silver completely nailed

it. (Laughter.) The guy is amazing. He predicted these guys would win. I want to thank everyone who participated in this election. Because of your votes, the only cobbler anyone's eating this Thanksgiving will come with a side of ice cream. And for that, our winning turkey can thank his stellar campaign team led by Steve Willardsen, who is the Chairman of the National Turkey Foundation and raised this beautiful bird at Miller Farm in Harrisonburg, Virginia. So here's Steve. (Applause.)

And, as always, if for some reason Cobbler cannot fulfill his duties as the Official White House Turkey, Gobbler will be waiting in the wings. From here, these two — (laughter) — from here these two lucky birds will be swept up in a whirlwind of fame and fortune that will ultimately lead them to Mount Vernon, where they will spend their twilight years in the storied home of George Washington. And later today, Michelle, Malia, Sasha and I will be taking two turkeys who were not so lucky to a local food bank here in Washington, D.C. I want to thank Jaindl Turkey Farms in Pennsylvania for donating these birds — or those birds — and I'd like to ask every American to do what they can to help families who are in need of a real Thanksgiving this year.

Tomorrow, in the company of friends and loved ones, we will celebrate a uniquely American holiday. And it's a chance for us to spend time with the people we care about and to give thanks for the blessings that we enjoy; and to think about just how lucky we are to live in the greatest nation on Earth. But it's also a time to remember those who are less fortunate — and this year, that's particularly true for our neighbors in the Northeast who have lost their homes and their possessions, and even their loved ones to Hurricane Sandy. In the last few weeks, I had a chance to visit both New Jersey and New York. And while I've seen entire neighborhoods reduced to rubble and heartbreaking loss and devastation, I have yet to find a broken spirit. Countless stories of courage, and compassion, and resilience have emerged in the aftermath of the storm. But one that comes to mind today is about a tree on Staten Island. It's a giant blue spruce that came crashing down in the front yard of Joseph Ingenito, whose home in New Dorp Beach flooded during the hurricane. Today, if you go to Joseph's street, you'll see a lot of damage and debris scattered all over the block. But you'll also see the top of that tree, standing tall in front of his house, decorated with ornaments that survived the storm, along with anything else his neighbors could find including empty cups and surgical masks and safety goggles. It's a Christmas tree, and it's there to remind the neighborhood that there will still be holidays to celebrate, and happy moments to share, and life will go on. And we will rebuild. And so tomorrow, we give thanks — not only for the things that we have, or the people we love, but for the spirit that sees us through the toughest times, and holds us together as one American family, guided along our journey by the hope of a better day. And I hope that over this holiday weekend, we're also thinking about our extraordinary men and women overseas who are serving far away from home in harm's way. But the reason they're there is because they give thanks too for the extraordinary life that have here in the United States of America. So may God bless those brave men and women in uniform who are away from their families this holiday season. May God bless the American people. May you all have a very happy Thanksgiving. And with that I think we are going to bestow the official pardon on — wait, which — is he Gobbler or Cobbler? Cobbler. Come on. All right, I've got to give the special

dispensation. Congratulations, Cobbler. You have a great life.  
Everybody give Cobbler a big round of applause.

## Passage B

### ***I. Background information***

White Day (14 March) is a special event observed mostly by teenagers and young adults in Japan, South Korea, China, and Taiwan. It was first celebrated in 1978 in Japan. This holiday, which was originally called “Marshmallow day”, was cleverly created by a confectionery company that tried to market white marshmallows as gifts. The Japanese National Confectionery Industry Association thought it was a splendid idea and made the announcement in 1978 that March 14th would be known as “White Day” which would serve as a type of answer day for the gifts received by men on Feb 14th. The Japanese responded well to this new holiday. Eventually, this practice spread to the neighboring East Asian countries of South Korea, China, and Taiwan. White chocolates and other white themed treats started appearing on the store shelves aside from just marshmallows! Now let's share some pretty White Day gifts together.

3月14日的白色情人节开始于1978年的日本。在日本、韩国、台湾和中国的青少年及年青人中盛行。原名“棉花糖节”的白色情人节是由日本一家想要在市场上推销棉花糖的糖果公司创意的。日本糖果协会认为这是一个很好的创意，在1978年，协会宣布3月14日为白色情人节，作为2月14日情人节收到礼物的男士们的“回馈日”。由于日本人很喜欢这个新节日，所以白色情人节席卷了包括韩国、中国及台湾地区的东亚地区。除了棉花糖，在商店里人们可以很快地买到白色巧克力及其它白色的礼物。让我们一起来欣赏白色情人节的礼物吧！

Something with the white theme is quite clever. 白色的礼物是最好的。



Lollipop Bouquet is Koreans favorite! 棒棒糖花束是韩国人的最爱。





Flower arrangements with some candy treats are also nice gifts for girls. 配以糖果的鲜花也是送给女孩不错的礼物。



Large crammed gift boxes with all sorts of snacks plus usually a cute plush toy or something are amazing. 装满各种小礼物的礼品盒十分诱人。



Jewelry is also a common gift for girls on White Day 白色情人节女孩普遍喜欢饰品。



It's so hard to not buy any candy because they are all packaged so pretty! 看到包装如此精美的糖果，你不想买都难。









## II. Text division

Para.A	The brief introduction of White Day.		
Para.B-E	Some useful tips on spending a happy White Day.	Para.B	Know the true meaning of chocolates.
		Para.C	Know the true meaning of sweets.
		Para.D	Respond to courtesy chocolates.
		Para.E	Respond to love chocolates.
Para.F	Go on a date with your lover.		

## Section Two

### Reading

#### Clicking specific information (1)

When we come across a word or expression we are unfamiliar with, don't immediately look it up in our dictionary. Often by looking at the context — the sentence and paragraph in which the word or expression appears — can we get a good sense of its general meaning. Good readers often use context clues to figure out the meaning of an unknown vocabulary item. Sometimes a writer knows that a word is unfamiliar or strange to many readers. To make the word easier to understand, the writer may include a definition of the

word in a sentence. Signal words can help you understand the definitions of some unfamiliar words. A good knowledge of signal words is also a fast way to understand the meaning of the sentence. The following words are some useful signal words of definition.

## Signal words                      Meanings

be	是, 即
be defined as	定义是
be known as	被认为是
be called	被称为
be related to	与相关
mean	意思是
refer to	指代
stand for	代表
indicate	意指
imply	暗示

Look at the following examples:

1. A **mosquito** is a small flying pest that thrusts the skin and then drinks blood.
2. In slang the term "**jam**" is known as a state of being in which a person finds himself or herself in a difficult situation.
3. **Marine biology** is defined as the study of oceanic plants and animals and their relations.
4. Krabacher suffers from **SAD**, which refers to seasonal affective disorder.
5. The Latin word "**amo**" means "I love".

Words Defined	Definitions	Signal Words	Chinese meanings
Mosquito	a small flying pest that thrusts the skin and drinks blood	is	蚊子
Jam	a state of being in which a person finds himself or herself in a difficult situation.	is known as	困境
Marine biology	the study of oceanic plants and animals and their relation	is defined as	海洋学
SAD	seasonal affective disorder	refers to	季节性情绪紊乱症
Amo	I love	means	我爱

## Writing

### A poster

英文海报是英语应用文中的主要体裁，使用场合非常广泛，它包括招聘广告、活动宣传和人

物介绍等。海报的写作方法如下:

### 1、基本要素

Theme/Topic/Event (主题/话题/事件)

Purpose and/or Occasion(目的和/或者场合)

Date, time and place(日期/时间/和地点)

A message of appeal, awareness, caution, warning or invitation (呼吁、关注、小心、警告或邀请的具体信息)

Slogans/ Catchy Phrases (口号/醒目的措辞)

Name of the individual/organization issuing it (发布者/组织的名称)

### 2、策略指导与解题技巧

明确海报的类型

明确你要写的海报是招聘广告、活动宣传还是人物介绍,准确表达其应有的内容和特点。

掌握海报语言特点

海报不同于其它类型的书面表达,它属于广告,要求用最短的文字包含最多的信息,以达到醒目的效果。因此海报多用省略句、缩略语及类似的语言。

突出重要信息

为进一步增强海报的醒目性,一些重要信息还常常被分行突出,并且在其前面用粗点、星号等特殊符号表示强调。

### Sample

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>GO! GO!! GO!!!</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">The Hope Cup Championship</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Sponsored by the Students' Union</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Exciting Basketball Final Between 2 Powers! Don't miss the opportunity!</p> <p>Place: The new stadium</p> <p>Time: Sunday 2:30 pm Oct. 15</p> <p>Teams: Math Dept. vs. English Dept.</p>
---

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 词性转换翻译法(4) 动词转译成名词

转译词类是常用的英汉翻译技巧。在翻译时,由于两种语言在语法和习惯表达上的差异,在保证原文意思不变的情况下,译文必须改变词性,这就叫转译词类(或词类转移)。英译汉中的词类转译尤其重要,因为如果处理不当,译文会出现两种倾向,一类是译文语义基本符合英语原文,但汉语表达欠正确;另一类是汉语表达尚有可读性,但译文语义却与英语原文不符。如果机械地按原语的词性去“对号入座”字字翻译,就会造成译文文理不通、寓意不明、语意含混。

英语中有许多由名词派生的动词和由名词转用的动词,以及有些被动式句子中的动词,在汉语中往往找不到与之相应的动词,这时可将其转译成汉语名词。

#### 1、名词派生的动词翻译成名词

What's that? It is shaped like a ball.

那是什么? 它的形状像个球。

The electronic computer is chiefly characterized by its accurate and rapid computation.

电脑的主要特点是计算迅速、准确。

characterized 和 shaped 分别由名词 character 和 shape 转化而来，而这两个动词在汉语中很难找到相应的动词，如果非要按照动词来翻译，翻译出的只能是非常蹩脚的汉语。因此，为了使汉语听起来自然，characterize 和 shape 只能翻为汉语的名词，用做主语。

## 2、名词转用的动词

He routinely radioed another agent on the ground.

他跟另一个地勤人员进行了例行的无线电联络。

Televisions work in much the same way as radios.

电视机的工作原理与收音机几乎完全一样。

radio 和 work 都是由名词转用的动词。

被动式句子中的动词

## 3、在这种句子中的动词，可译成“受到——+名词”，“予（加）以——名词”

No matter who does it, he will be punished. 无论谁干这种事，都会受到应有的惩罚。

The experts were warmly welcomed by a crowd of people. 专家们受到许多人的热烈欢迎。

# Section Three

## How to celebrate Christmas

**1. Send gifts to loved ones.** This tradition comes from the story of the three wise men who got gifts for baby Jesus on Christmas. Every Christmas, gifts are exchanged among loved ones, especially children. The story of Santa Claus also comes from this tradition.

**2. Decorate the Christmas tree.** This refers to the tradition of decorating a pine tree using lights, tinsels, garlands, ornaments, candy canes, etc. Today, a Christmas tree is an indispensable part of Christmas celebration.

**3. Light up the Christmas candle.** This refers to the tradition of placing a lighted candle outside houses during the Christmas season. A candle signifies hope as it brings light even to the darkest room. In the earlier times, when Christians were persecuted, they were not allowed to practice prayers. Hence, a single candle used to be placed outside the house as a sign that Christian prayers were being conducted inside.

**4. Prepare the Christmas cake.** This was an English tradition which started centuries ago. On Christmas eve, plum porridge was served to the people. As years passed, various other things like dry fruits, honey and spices were used. Soon this porridge got replaced with the Christmas cake. Christmas cakes are made using eggs, butter, confections, fruits, etc. Today a Christmas cake is an integral part of a Christmas menu.

**5. Sing Christmas carols.** It refers to the age-old custom of enchanting a number of traditional Christmas songs during the Christmas season. It adds to the joy and fun to the atmosphere. Different Christmas hymns or carols like The First Noel, Jingle Bells, Joy to the world, etc are sung every Christmas as a part of the Christmas celebration.

**6. Distribute Christmas candies.** This is one of the most wonderful traditions of all. Christmas candies are distributed to neighbors during the Yuletide season. On the day of Christmas, all misunderstandings and grudges are forgotten and the community comes together to celebrate the birth of Christ.



# ● Suggested Versions

## Passage A

### 节日的变迁

大多数节日都起源于宗教。庆祝节日的初衷就是以各种方式激发宗教情感。其中一种方式是举行宗教游行，在游行时，其成员们又唱又跳，演奏乐器。另一种是以斋戒的方式来庆祝节日。集会也同样举行，在此，一些有影响力的人物发表鼓舞人心的演说，表演戏剧和舞剧以纪念节日的创始人。有时，两个或多个仪式一起庆祝，其目的是为了激励人们思考、鼓励人们做善事，并使人们反省自己过去的行为。

许多节日，不管在世界何处举行，都仍沿用上述方式。然而，随着时间的推移，节日的庆祝方式发生了巨大改变。从这个角度来说，节日纯粹是人们享受快乐的一个机会。它是人们工作之余得以休息，享受乐趣的时间；是人们穿上自己最好的衣服，进行购物的最佳时间；也是人们约见朋友，享用特别食物的时间。尽管这个节日可能涉及拜神，但在庆祝方式上面已经失去了精神或宗教色彩。丰富多彩的节日吸引了越来越多的人参与其中。这有点类似于一个受大众欢迎的电影故事要比经典电影卖座一样。

许多群体和社区都有自己特定的、涉及重大仪式元素的节日。然而，随着世界全球化进程的日益加快，许多曾局限于特定社区的节日被其他人广泛接受。毫无疑问，这促进了民族融合，社会的交流与和谐。

因此，世界为节日的商业化敞开了大门。节日成为了商人们寻求商机的活跃时间。随着消费者数量每年增多，商家们就要想出更多的主意来满足他们的需要。由此，各种各样丰富的贺卡、许多与特定节日相关的特色货品相继出现。节日宴会以及有节日主题的商场和超市也应运而生。

这是一个好的还是坏的发展呢？如果它能使商人和日益增多的消费者高兴，而且它并没有造成任何麻烦或伤害，那么谁会抱怨呢？各种各样的人组成了这个多彩的世界，因此，没有必要每个人都以同样的方式庆祝节日，而节日带给每个人的意义也没必要完全相同。

## Passage B

### 白色情人节

3月14日是白色情人节，正好在情人节后的一个月。情人节是人们对爱神表达敬意的日子，但是，人们还是常常开玩笑说情人节是贺卡商与糖果商创立的节日。白色情人节起源于1977年的一次失败的棉花糖推销活动。那年日本糖果协会急需推销糖果，最好的办法就是创造一个节日。于是，商人们把白色情人节定义为情人节的“回应日”或者“回报答日”。在情人节那天，女士送男士巧克力。一个月后，男士应该买两到三倍多的礼物回赠给送礼的女士。由于市场作用，日本女士们在来年的3月14日收到了大量的白色情人节糖果及其他礼物。白色情人节作为一种全方位的文化现象，深受女士们的喜爱，1980年以后，它成为了一种全方位的文化现象席卷了全亚洲。不仅仅在日本，只要你想，你可以在任何地方庆祝白色情人节。来吧！我们一起庆祝。

了解你在情人节收到的巧克力的真正含义。首先，列出情人节送你巧克力的人的名单。在日本，女士送给男士的巧克力有两种：一种出于礼貌，另一种表达爱意。“礼节巧克力”通常在同事或朋友之间相互赠送，而“真爱巧克力”通常是由女士亲手制作或者品质较高的巧克

力，送给他们所爱的男士。所以，一定要区分他们所送巧克力的含义。

知晓不同糖果的意思。确保你的意图明确，不会引起误会。白色巧克力：我们做朋友吧。巧克力糖果：我喜欢你。巧克力曲奇饼：我爱你。

别人送你礼节巧克力，你就回赠相应礼物。这很简单，通常一盒普通的白色巧克力就很好，几乎任何商店都可以买到。

想一想用什么回赠真爱巧克力。记住送你这类巧克力的人对你有爱意，你需要好好想想要回赠什么礼物。如果你有相同的感受，就用心回赠她一份礼物吧。不过如果你想拒绝她，一份附有解释性便条的礼物能帮助你。记得礼物的颜色是白色，选择白色是因为其代表纯洁，能让人回忆起十多岁时纯洁而甜蜜的爱情，并且糖果也是白色的。先将礼物用漂亮的彩带扎好，外面用白色的礼品纸或礼品袋包好即可。理想的真爱礼物可以是：蛋糕、鲜花、蜡烛、泰迪熊、香水或者衣服。

像情人节一样，去约会吧。这是一个特殊的日子，是外出约会的绝佳时机。你可以选择到日本餐厅吃饭，也可以像日本的情侣们一样去约会。甚至你可以在白色情人节当天到日本去旅行。

---

## ●Suggested Keys and Scripts

### **Get Started**

1. A    2. D

### **Reading for Meaning**

**Task 1**    1. B   2. C   3. A   4. A   5. D

**Task 2**    1. F   2. T   3. T   4. F   5. T

### **Task 3**

**1. Chinese Festivals :** the Spring Festival 春节, the Lantern Festival 元宵节, the Tomb-sweeping festival 清明节, the Dragon Boat Festival 端午节, the Mid-autumn Festival 中秋, Women's Day 妇女节, Labor Day/May Day 劳动节, Children's Day 儿童节, Army's Day 建军节, Double Ninth Festival 重阳节, National Day 国庆节。

**2. Western Festivals:** St. Valentine's Day 情人节, Halloween 万圣节, Thanksgiving Day 感恩节, Christmas Day 圣诞节, April Fool's Day 愚人节, Mother's Day 母亲节, Memorial Day(美国)阵亡将士纪念日, Father's day 父亲节, independence Day (美国) 国庆节, Boxing Day 节礼日。

### **Reading for Language**

**Task 4**    1. significance   2. have been complaining   3. Undoubtedly   4. intended   5. spiritual

6. emerged    7. inspiration   8. religious   9. reflection    10. integration

**Task 5**    1. were   restricted to    2. got   involved in    3. come up with

4. related to    5. pay their respects to

**Task 6**    1. are allowed    2. was invited    3. has been informed



4. is being discussed    5. will be put up    6. decorated  
 7. be completed    8. being made  
 9. to be given    10. being punished

## ***Reading for Comprehension***

**Task 1**    1. March 14    2. Let's be friends    3. I like you    4. I love you    5. love gifts

**Task 2**    1. their sweets    2. Two or three    3. decline    4. any stores    5. Japanese restaurant

## ***Listening & Speaking***

**Task 1**    1. A    2. D    3. D    4. C    5. B

### **Scripts:**

1. M: Lisa, do you know which festival is the most important for Chinese people?  
 W: Of course, it's the Spring Festival during which families get together and have a big dinner, just like Christmas in the West.  
 Q: Which festival are they talking about?
2. W: Hey, Michael. What plans do you have for Valentine's Day?  
 M: Nothing special. I'll have dinner with my girlfriend and then do some shopping.  
 Q: What is Michael going to do on Valentine's Day?
3. M: Do you know tomorrow will be Thanksgiving Day? I'm so excited.  
 W: So am I. In Canada, Thanksgiving Day is on the second Monday in October.  
 Q: What is the date of Thanksgiving Day in Canada?
4. W: I suppose you have been buying Thanksgiving gifts for your family.  
 M: Well, I bought a pair of sports shoes for my son, but I haven't decided what to buy for my wife. Probably some clothes or classical music records will be her favorites.  
 Q: What has the man bought for his wife?
5. M: Where were you during Christmas, Marry?  
 W: My parents and I traveled to Australia for a nice holiday.  
 Q: What do we learn from this conversation?

**Task 2**    1. November    2. In 1621    3. Turkey    4. God    5. good health    6. good friends

### **Scripts:**

- A: When do you celebrate Thanksgiving Day?  
 B: On the last Thursday of November.  
 A: When was this festival born?  
 B: In 1621.  
 A: Could you tell me something more?  
 B: Well, it's usually a time of family reunion and having a big thanksgiving dinner together. Before dinner, a moment is taken to remember the meaning of Thanksgiving.  
 A: What is that for?  
 B: We thank God for his blessings in our lives, such as good health, good friends and our family' safety. As Thanksgiving Day is approaching, do you have any plans?  
 B: Not yet. All my friends are going back home.

A: You can come to my home if you like. We will have a big feast to celebrate. Besides traditional food turkey, some other delicious food like yams, corn, carrots and pumpkin pies are also available.

A: That's very kind of you. I'd love to.

**Task 3** Question 1. What is the name of the event?

Question 2. Who will participate in the New Year party?/ Who will be qualified to participate in the New Year party?

Question 3. How much does it cost?

Answer1. In Student Activity Center.

Answer2. Colorful ribbons.

Answer3. Crisps, biscuits, pudding, apple pie and coffee.

**Scripts:**

Question 1. Where will the New Year party be held?

Question 2. What is the decoration?

Question 3. What kinds of foods and drink will be offered?

**Task 4**

## English Song

Mama

(妈妈)

She used to be my only enemy and never let me be free  
Catching me in places that I knew I shouldn't be  
Every other day I crossed the line.  
I didn't mean to be so bad  
I never thought you would become the friend I never had  
Back then I didn't know why,  
why you were misunderstood (Mama)  
So now I see through your eyes,  
all that you did was love  
Mama I love you, Mama I care.  
Mama I love you. Mama my friend. You're my friend  
Mama I love you....  
I didn't want to hear it then but  
I'm not ashamed to say it now  
Every little thing you said and did was right for me  
I had a lot of time to think about,  
about the way I used to be  
Never had a sense of my responsibility  
But now I'm sure I know why,  
why you were misunderstood (Mama)  
So now I see through your eyes.  
All I can give you is love

Mama I love you. Mama I care.  
Mama I love you. Mama my friend.  
You're my friend

**Task 5** 1. 火鸡 2. 南瓜灯 3. 女孩节

**Task 6** 1. 狂欢节; 嘉年华会 2. 复活节彩蛋 3. (度假)胜地 4. 阵亡将士纪念日 5. 浮动假日 6. 植树节 7. 游行

**Task 7** 1. a ——an 2. believed ——is believed 3. color——colors  
4. includes——include 5. involving——involved

**Task 8**

### **Great American Picnic**

**Independence Day with the greatest fireworks show in the area!**

**Friday, July 4, 2014**

**5 pm-10 pm**

**Town Point Park, Downtown Norfolk, VA.**

**Free and open to the Public**

### **Poster**

**An annual celebration party for traditional Mid-Autumn Festival.**

**Sunday, September 7, 2014**

**6:30 pm-10 pm**

**on the playground of the campus**

**Free and open**

**Welcome all**

### Task 9

1. 她是今年音乐节吉祥物的设计师。
6. 今年我们在感恩节上享用的火鸡重量比去年的那只要重得多。
7. 这个小男孩的梦想就是过春节时父母、亲戚可以给他一些压岁钱。
8. 圣诞树顶上装饰物的形状像一颗大星星。
9. 洛迦诺电影节的特点是拥有轻松的氛围及众多的活动。

### Task 10

1. 许多群体和社区都有自己特定的、涉及重大仪式元素的节日。
2. 节日成了商人们寻求商机的最佳时间。
3. 由于市场作用,日本女士们在来年的3月14日收到了大量的白色情人节糖果及其它礼物。
4. 然而,如果你想拒绝她,可以在回赠的礼物中附上一张解释的便条。
5. 了解你在情人节收到的巧克力的真正含义。首先,列出情人节送你巧克力的人的名单。在日本,女士送给男士的巧克力有两种:一种出于礼貌,另一种表达爱意。“礼节巧克力”通常在同事或朋友之间相互赠送,而“真爱巧克力”通常是由女士亲手制作或者品质较高的巧克力,送给他们所爱的男士。所以,一定要区分他们所送巧克力的含义。

## Workshop

### Task 1

Picture 1. **couplets**

Picture 2. **reunion dinner**

Picture 3. **gift money**

Picture 4. **firecrackers**

### Task 2

Suggested traditional celebrations:

1. Send gifts to loved ones.
2. Decorate Christmas trees.
3. Distribute Christmas candies.
4. Light up Christmas candles.
5. Prepare for Christmas dinner
6. Sing Christmas carols.

# Unit Eight

## Diverse Cultures

### • Teaching Reference

#### Teaching Objectives

<b>Vocabularies &amp; Structures</b>	befriend, diversify, distinct, specific, personality, limitless, acquire, automatically, unconsciously, multiculturalism			
	an insight of, read up on, in conclusion, a wide range of, agree on			
	Moods			
<b>Skills</b>	Listening & Speaking	Reading	Writing	Translation
	Cultural differences	Clicking specific information (2)	Sign languages	Word-added
<b>Workshops</b>	1. Talking about how to be a polite guest in a foreign family		2. Talking about the table manners in Western countries	

#### Section One

### Passage A

#### I. Background information

#### The American Concept of Friendship

Compartmentalized friendship



Americans typically assume that when people gather to socialize, they will undertake some activities together. They may go to a restaurant for lunch or dinner, go to a movie, play cards, engage in or watch sports, or “have a few drinks.” Americans do not usually assume that it can be pleasant or rewarding to sit and talk with other people for extended periods. Their discomfort with such a lack of structured activity is often evident if they are forced to sit and interact with people they do not know fairly well.

Perhaps because of their emphasis on “doing things” with friends, Americans typically develop what have been called compartmentalized friendship. That is, they tend to have different friends with whom they engaged in different activities. Americans might have friends with whom they study, others with whom they go shopping or dancing on Saturday nights.

## 美国人的友谊观

### 分类式友谊

美国人通常认为，人们在聚会或交往时，应该一起参加一些活动。他们会去餐馆用午餐或晚餐，看电影，玩纸牌，参加或观看体育比赛，或“喝几杯”。美国人通常认为与人长时间的坐着聊天并不是一件令人愉快或有所收获的事情。如果他们被迫坐下来和他们不太熟悉的人交谈，通常会对这样一个缺乏结构化的活动表现出明显的不悦。

也许是因为他们总是强调与朋友一起“做事”，所以美国人建立的友谊通常被称为“分类式友谊”。换言之，他们往往有不同朋友一起参与不同的活动。美国人可能会有一起学习的朋友、一起健身的朋友、一起购物的朋友或一起在周六晚上跳舞的朋友。

### Gender roles and friendship





In many countries, a friend must be a person of one's own gender. Most Americans, though, believe it is possible to have friends of the opposite sex, and they do not generally assume that a male and a female will participate in sexual activity if they are alone together. This is not to say that Americans see no sexual component in a male-female friendship; they believe the people involved are capable of showing the restraint and maturity necessary to avoid sexual interaction. Thus, male and female business colleagues might travel to a conference together without anyone's assuming that their relationship is abnormal.

### 性别角色和友谊

在很多国家，朋友应该是同性别的，然而，大部数美国人认为可以拥有异性朋友。他们通常不会认为男女单独相处就一定会发生性行为。这并不是说美国人认为男女之间不存在性的成分，而是认为异性朋友之间有能力显示必要的克制和成熟来避免性接触。因此，男女同事可能会一起外出开会，不会有人认为他们会有不正常的男女关系。

## II. Outline

Para. 1	The importance of befriending people from different cultures.		
Para. 2-5	The benefits of befriending people from different cultures.	Para. 2	Developing multiculturalism within individuals.
		Para. 3	Enhancing one's personality.
		Para. 4	Increasing one's knowledge.
		Para. 5	Broadening one's horizon.
Para.6	The conclusion.		

## III. Detailed study of Passage A

**1. befriend** v. to become friends with 与...交朋友

**Synonym** make friends with

**e.g.**

Befriending people from other cultures can be of great importance.

与来自不同文化背景的人交朋友非常重要。

Faith was one of the few people willing to *befriend* freshmen.

费思是愿意与新生交朋友的少数人之一。

**2. multiculturalism** n. the doctrine that several different cultures (rather than one national culture) can coexist peacefully and equitably in a single country 多元文化

**e.g.**

The main advantage of having friends from different ethnic backgrounds and cultures is that it promotes multiculturalism within individuals.

与来自其他民族和文化背景的人交朋友，其主要好处是提升个人多元文化意识。

The Korean business grows up in the background of American multiculturalism.

韩裔经济在美国多元文化背景下发展兴盛。

**multicultural** a. 多种文化的；融合或具有多种文化的

**3. an insight of** to see clearly and deeply 对...的深入了解

**e.g.**

Having friends who are culturally different from you allows you to develop an insight of their languages, values and lives.

结交有文化差异的朋友让你能够深入了解他们的语言、价值观和生活。

Visiting London gave me an insight of the lives of the people living there.

伦敦一游，使我对当地居民的生活有了深刻了解。

**4.** The first sentence of Paragraph 3 “Having friends from different cultures has a highly positive influence on one's personality.” can be paraphrased as follows:

One of the advantages of having friends from different cultures is that it can promote the development of one's personality.

**5. personality** n. the complex of all the attributes—behavioral, temperamental, emotional and mental—that characterize a unique individual 人格，个性

**Synonyms** individuality, character

**e.g.**

Having friends from different cultures has a highly positive influence on one's personality.

和来自其他文化的人交朋友对人格的形成有非常积极的影响。

He has a strong personality.

他是个很有个性的人。

**6. acquire** v. to gain something by your own efforts, ability or behavior 获得，得到

**Synonyms** obtain, gain, achieve

**e.g.**

It teaches one to handle himself in different settings and helps one acquire social skills.

你学会了在不同的场合应对自如，也有助于你社交能力的提高。

We expect to acquire the knowledge in happiness.

我们希望在快乐中获得知识。

**acquirement** n. 获得；学识；技能；学到的东西

**acquirable** a. 可得的；可获的

**acquired** a. 已取得的；已获得的；已成习惯的

**7. automatically** ad. in a mechanical manner; by a mechanism 必然地，自动地

**Synonym** mechanically

**e.g.**

When one befriends people from other cultures, he automatically learns about the differences of their practices, languages, certain habits etc.

与其他文化背景的人交朋友时，你会不由自主地了解他们的习俗、语言和特定习惯等与你自身的差异。

The door locks automatically. 这门会自动锁上。

**automatic a.** 无意识的，自动的

**8. unconsciously ad.** without awareness 无意识地

**Synonyms** automatically, senselessly

**e.g.**

Unconsciously, one begins to diversify his experiences about the world and understand there are other belief systems as well.

不知不觉地，你体验的世界开始变得多样化，你也知道了还有其他信仰的存在。

He unconsciously patted a tree with his hand when talking to her.

在和她讲话时，他无意识地用手拍着一棵树。

He clicked his heels unconsciously.

他无意识地使鞋后跟发出咔哒、咔哒的响声。

**consciously ad.** 有意识地

**unconscious a.** 不知不觉的，无意的

**9. diversify v.** to make (more) diverse 使多样化；使不同

**Synonyms** vary, variegate

**e.g.**

The university diversified the educational program by introducing new subjects.

该大学引进新学科使教育计划多样化。

A factory must try to diversify the products for further development.

一个工厂要获得进一步发展就要努力使产品多样化。

**diversification n.** 多元化

**diversified a.** 多样化的；多种多样的

**diverse a.** 不同的，相异的

**10. a wide range of** widespread, all kinds of 大范围的；各种不同的

**e.g.**

Not only do you gain knowledge, but when you take part in their practices, you gain a wide range of experiences as well.

你不仅会获得知识，当参与他们的活动时，还会丰富你的阅历。

The company sells new cars with a wide range of prices.

该公司销售各种价格的新车子。

**11.** The fifth sentence of Paragraph 4 “In preparing for taking that trip you may learn the basics of a new language, you may read up on the culture and distinct practices of it.” can be paraphrased as follows:

When you are preparing for the trip, you may have laid the foundation for a new language and studied the local cultures and customs.

**12. read up on** deliberate on 研读

**e.g.**

In preparing for taking that trip you may learn the basics of a new language, you may read up on the culture and distinct practices of it.

在准备过程中，你可能会学习一些语言基础研究一下当地文化及不同习俗。

I shall have to read up on the subject if I am to give a talk about it.

要就此主题作报告，我必须仔细研读这个题目。

**13. distinct a.** easy to perceive; especially clearly outlined; not alike; different in nature or quality. 明显的；独特的；区别的

**Synonyms** obvious, visible, unique

**e.g.**

There is a distinct improvement in your spoken English.

你的英语口语有明显的进步。

Although they look very alike, these plants are actually quite *distinct* from each other.

尽管这些植物看起来很相似，实际上却属于不同的种类。

**distinction n.** 差别；差异；对比

**distinctness n.** 不同；明显

**distinctive a.** 独特的，有特色的，与众不同的

**distinctively ad.** 区别地；特殊地；有特色地

**14. limitless a.** without limits in extent or size or quantity; seemingly boundless in amount, number, degree, or especially extent 无限的

**Synonyms** unlimited, interminate, unbounded

**e.g.**

The possibilities are limitless if you only just think about it.

只要你能想到的，就会拥有无限可能性。

The future holds limitless promise.

未来有着无限的希望。

**limit n.& v.** 有限；限制

**15. specific a.** applying to or characterized by or distinguishing something particular or special or unique; 特定的，具体的

**Synonyms** particular, precise

**e.g.**

We grow up learning about our specific cultures and practices.

在我们成长过程中，我们学习自己的特定文化和习俗。

We haven't fixed a specific date for our meeting.

我们会议的具体日期还没有定下来。

**specifically ad.** 特别地；明确地；具体地

**specificity n.** 特性；特征；特效

**16. agree on** to be in accord; be in agreement 赞同，同意

**e.g.**

There could be something in their cultures that we can't agree on, but we should learn to become more broad-minded of others' differences.

他们的文化中可能会有有一些我们不接受的成分，但我们应该学着以更宽广心胸去接受他们的文化。

Will you agree on what I said just now?

您同意我刚才说的话吗？

**agreement n.** 同意；一致；协议

**17. in conclusion** the item at the end 最后，总之

**Synonyms** at last, finally, in a word, in the end

**e.g.**

In conclusion, it is really beneficial that we make friends culturally and ethnically different from us.

总之，和不同文化、种族的人交朋友着实有益。

In conclusion, I'd like to thank you for all you've done for me.

最后，我要感谢你们为我所做的一切。

**conclusive a.** 决定性的；最后的

## ***Get Relaxed***

### **Scripts**

## **Christmas**

Christmas is a festive occasion celebrated all around the world. Although Christmas Day is December 25<sup>th</sup>, the Christmas season lasts about one month. In north America, during this time, homes are beautifully decorated and cities come alive with Christmas lights. There are many special celebrations during this time, and Christmas music is played nearly everywhere.

Shopping is on everyone's mind, as each person thinks about what gifts to buy for those special friends and relatives. The month of December is far the largest shopping season of the year. Many parents tell their children that Santa Claus will bring them gifts if they're good throughout the year. But the Santa that we see in the malls and on advertisements was created only about 150 years ago.

During the Christmas season, people go on the hunt for the perfect tree, whether they buy a fresh tree or artificial one, the family spends time together, decorating it with beautiful lights, balls and ornamented. Then it's time to place the wrapped gifts under the tree, waiting until Christmas day to open. Homes are decorated with evergreen wreaths, candles and the nativity scene and stocking are hung by the fireplace with small gifts and treats placed inside.

Christmas is the largest card sending occasion in the world. Many people include a family picture and letter about the year of family events in the cards and e-mails, trying to send them so they will arrive before Christmas Day.

Christmas is a time when each person expresses his or her love through giving. On Christmas Eve or Christmas Day, families and friends exchange gifts. Most children wake up early on Christmas morning, and run in their pajamas to open their presents placed under the tree. Many families gather together, sing Christmas carols, read the Christmas story from the Bible and then exchange gifts with one another.

On Christmas Day, families gather to eat a big meal together. A typical Christmas dinner would be include turkey, ham, stuffing, cranberries, mashed potatoes and gravy, pies and lots Christmas cookies. People also like to watch football games on TV. Time spent with family and friends is a very important part of the holiday.

Around the world, many people attend special Christmas programs which are performed

at churches and schools. Children and adults sing popular Christmas carols and perform the Christmas story, acting out the account of Mary, Joseph, baby Jesus, the shepherds and the angels. These are the traditions that surround Christmas but since Santa isn't the origin, and wonderful celebrations are not the essence then what is the true meaning of the holiday? This is a good question since all of history points to this event! Each day we refer to this date the birth of Christ. Our calendars make this known in the use of B.C. and A.D. means "Before Christ" and A.D. "Anno Domini" means "In the year of our Lord" referring to Jesus Christ. All of history talks at the birth of Christ, and every time we say the date we are really saying "It has been more than 2,000 years since the birth of Christ." Jesus' life is not only recorded in the Bible, and the writing of the early church fathers, but also in other historical books. For example, Josephus an important Jewish historian tells of Jesus' birth, life and death. Both Tacitus, a Roman historian and the Younger, a Roman governor of Bithynia and persecutor of Christians confirm the life of Jesus in their secular writings.

The word Christmas itself talks about the season Jesus came. Christmas can be broken into two parts "Christ" and "mas". "Christ" is the Greek translation of the word "Messiah", and "mas" is the Latin word for "to send". When you put the word "Christmas" together, you get "to send the Messiah." This is the Messiah God promised to mend the relationship that had been broken by Adam and Eve, the very first people, the ones who disobeyed Him.

God had created the man and woman, and put them in the garden to have fellowship with Him. There they walked and talked and enjoyed fellowship. When Adam and Eve sinned against God, it broke that relationship. In God's love and mercy, He sent His own son Jesus to earth in the form of a man, to be the perfect sacrifice for our sins, so that we might have forgiveness and a relationship with God, reading the purpose of why we were created.

The purpose of Christmas is to celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ. Jesus did not come from the West. He was from the east born in Israel in the city of Bethlehem. But how does the story of the famous event go? The angel Gabriel appeared to a young girl named Mary and told her she would become pregnant and that she was to name the baby "Jesus" which means "he shall save His people from their sins." This had been predicted many years earlier in the writing of Isaiah the prophet. Mary became pregnant and carried the baby without ever knowing a man. Joseph took Mary as his wife as God had directed him. On the night Jesus was born, Joseph and Mary arrived in Bethlehem to find all of the inns full. The only place available for the king of kings to be born was a small barn with farm animals. He was wrapped in clothes and placed in a manger. Shepherds were living out in the fields nearby. When an angel of the Lord appeared to them, they were terrified. But the angel said "fear not, I bring you good news of great joy that will be for all the people. Today the savior has been born. He is Christ the Lord." They hurried off and found Mary and Joseph, and the baby Jesus exactly where the angel had said they would be. Thousands of angels filled in the sky that night, celebrating the birth of Jesus. Also wise men came from the East during King Herod's reign in Israel and brought gifts of gold, frankincense and myrrh and worshipped the small child.

Christmas is a wonderful time worldwide, filled with much celebration, hope and joy.



# Passage B

## I. Background information

### Culture Shock

Culture shock is the sense of disorientation or loss that comes with encountering fundamental differences in values and way of life.

Most people who go to another country respond initially with excitement, curiosity, and stimulation. They enjoy the cultural surprises, and they work through the stresses. Then comes the culture shock, as the nature and number of unfamiliar things grows, a longing for the familiar people and way of life they have left behind.

Most people experience some degree of culture shock when they visit a new country, whether they admit it to themselves or not. Culture shock is more a product of the situation of being in a new culture than of the traveler's person traits. However, your traits- including patience, curiosity, sense of humor, and tolerance for ambiguity- can influence how deep or long-lasting the culture shock will be.

Academic analysts point out that the experience of culture shock need not be negative. While there may be some unhappiness and unpleasantness along with confusion and disorientation, the discomfort is a necessary step in learning about the new culture. If everything in the new place were just like home, no learning would come from being there. Try to experience the culture shock and appreciate the different cultures, because they're going to guide you to a higher echelon of personal fulfillment.

### 文化冲击

文化冲击是指面对不同的价值观与生活方式时所感到的迷惘与困惑。

大多数人来到异国时，最初的感受都是激动、好奇、兴奋。他们喜欢这种文化诧异并努力应对文化压力，随着陌生的事物数量增多，对熟人和熟悉生活方式的怀念也与日俱增，于是便产生了文化冲击。

大多数人来到一个新国家都会受到某种程度的文化冲击，不管自己是否承认这个问题。文化冲击源于对所处文化的陌生，而非源于个人的性格特点。但是某些个性特征包括耐心、好奇、幽默感和对不明事物的容忍度都会对这种文化冲击的深度和长久产生影响。

学术分析人士指出，经历文化冲击未必是一件坏事。迷惘与困惑所导致的痛苦与不悦是学习新文化所必须体验的心理感受，如果新地方的一切与家里一模一样，那就学不到任何东西了。试着去体验文化冲击，去鉴赏不同的文化，因为它们能引导你去攀越一个更高、更能实现自我的阶梯。

## II. Text division

Para. A	The importance of appreciating different cultures.		
Para. B-G	The efficient ways of appreciating	Para. B-C	By reading books.

	different cultures.	Para. D-E	By learning a foreign language.
		Para. F	By tasting authentic food.
		Para. G	By making pen pals.

## Section Two

### Reading

#### Clicking specific information (2)

在阅读过程中,可以根据文中出现的一些信号词来判断句子之间的关系,掌握段落发展线索,提高阅读速度,加强英文理解能力。

##### 1.类似性质的信号词

Estimates of the number of homeless Americans range from 350,000 to three million. Likewise, estimates of the number of homeless school children vary radically.

“likewise”这一信号词显示了前面所提到的某事实的特点也适用于下一个将提到的事实,或者表示相同信息。此句用 likewise 连接两个具有“估计”含义的句子,第二个句子也含有“无家可归的人的数字难以估计”的含义。因此,阅读时见到这样的信号词无须放慢阅读速度。常见表类似的信号词有: and, furthermore, more, than, that, also, likewise, moreover, in addition, what is more, for instance, for example

##### 2.转折的信号词

A US Department of Education report, based on state estimates, states that there are 220,000 homeless school-age children, about a third of whom do not attend school on a regular basis, But the National Coalition for the Homeless estimates that there are at least two times as many homeless children, and that less than half of them attend school regularly.

“but”前后是完全不同的信息描述,它向读者显示了作者的思路在这里有了转折。在这个语段中,两个机构对无家儿童数字估计差别巨大,所以用 but 连接用以强调。在阅读过程中,碰到这样的信号词我们需放慢阅读速度,以准确获取作者真正想要说明的意思。常见表转折的信号词有: although, however, on the contrary, but, in spite of, otherwise, despite, nevertheless, yet。

##### 3.因果关系的信号词

The Elementary School Center in New York City estimates that there are 1.5 million of them, many of whom are not counted as children because they do not stay in family shelters and tend to live by themselves on the streets.

因果关系是最常见的连接手段之一,为理解文章提供重要线索,也是学生在英语等级考试中常遇到的设题手段之一。例中由 because 揭示为什么有些儿童没有被归入儿童的范畴的原因。常见表因果关系的信号词有: for, thus, because, for this reason, so, therefore, as, since, consequently。

##### 4.顺序的信号词

Which the student can first ask the audience to guess and then go ahead and explain it.

此例中 first 和 then 都是表示顺序的词语,这些词语可以帮助我们理解一件事情是怎样发展和推进的。抓住了这样的信号词就把握住了作者的思路。常见表顺序的信号词有: first, second, third, and so on, then, after, before, next, last, afterward, finally

常见的信号词按类别归纳如下：

**1. Spatial signals (Answers the “where” question):**

between	on	by	here	there
left	right	these	close to	near
this	side	middle	west	beside
east	about	north	south	around
over	under	away	in front of	across
into	behind	toward	beyond	above
below	opposite	upon	outside	upon
outside	inside	alongside	over	out
far	in	adjacent	near	next to

**2. Comparison-contrast signals (We will now compare idea A with idea B):**

and	or	also	too	best
most	either	less	less than	more than
same	better	even	then	half
much as	like	analogous to	but	different from
still	yet	however	although	opposite
rather	while	though		

**3. Conclusion signals (This ends the discussion and may have special importance):**

as a result	consequently	finally	from this we see...	in conclusion
in summary	hence	last of all	therefore	

**4. Fuzz signals (Idea not exact, or author to positive and wishes to qualify a statement):**

almost	if	look like	maybe	could
some	except	should	alleged	nearly
might	reputed	seem like	be reported	purported
sort of	probably			

## Writing

### Sign language

#### More Examples about sign languages

##### 1. Airport 飞机场

Airport lounges 机场休息室

Airport shuttle 机场班车  
Arrivals 进港  
Assistance 问讯处  
Help point (desk) 问讯处  
Inquiries 问讯处  
Check in area (zone) 办理登机区  
Customers lounges 旅客休息室  
Departure airport 离港时间  
Departure time on reverse 返航时间  
Departures 出港  
Destination airport 到达机场  
Domestic flights. 国内航班  
Emergency exit 安全出口  
Exit to all routes 各通道出口  
Flight connections 转机处  
Left baggage 行李寄存  
Lost property 失物招领  
Luggage from flights 到港行李  
Luggage pick up 取行李  
Luggage reclaim 取行李  
Missing people help line 走失求救热线  
Missing, police appeal for assistance 警察提供走失帮助  
No smoking except in designated area 除指定区域外，禁止吸烟  
Passport control 入境检验  
Please leave your luggage with you at all times 请随身携带你的行李  
Queue here 在此排队  
Reclaim belt 取行李传送带  
Reserved seats 预定的座位  
Return fares 往返票价  
Short stay 短暂停留  
Stay close 跟紧

## **2. Restaurant and Pub 餐馆酒吧**

Air conditioned 空调开放  
Daily specials 每日特色菜  
Drinks purchased are for taken away only 饮料仅供外卖  
Eat in or take away 店内吃或外卖  
Taste, please 欢迎品尝  
Please wait here or take advantage until our hostess escorts to your table. 请稍等或自便，主人会领你入座。  
Super cuisine and wide selection of drinks 美味佳肴，各种饮料  
Take away service available 提供外卖  
Today's special/Today's specialties 今日特色菜  
Try our summer range of food 品尝夏季各种食品  
Wines & spirits 红酒白酒

### 3. Road and Traffic 公路和交通

Approaching end of motorway 即将驶出高速

Avoid the jams. 避免交通堵塞。

Dangerous bend 弯道危险

Diverted traffic 交叉路口

Entry to motorway 高速入口

Left junction 左交叉口

Look left (right) 向左(右)看

Low bridge ahead 前方桥低

New hours of parking control 停车控制新时段

No entry 禁止驶入

No stopping at any time 任何时间不准停车

No thoroughfare 禁止通行

No trade or business vehicle unless authorized 未经允许货车禁止通行

Pedestrian crossing ahead 注意前方人行横道

Pedestrian crossing 人行横道

Please drive carefully 请小心驾驶。

Road closed 此路封闭

Speed limit of 48kmh 限速每小时 48 公里

The law requires you to wear a seatbelt 法规要求系安全带

This vehicle stops frequently 随时停车

## Translation

### 英语翻译技巧之 增词法

由于英语和汉语表达方式不同,有些句子翻译成汉语后会出现意思不够明确或者句子不够通顺的现象,还有一些词,虽然在英语原文中意义明确而完整,但是翻译成汉语后却不通顺,这种情况下,就需要使用增词法的翻译技巧。

所谓增词法,就是在翻译时按意义上或句法上的需要增加一些词来更忠实通顺地表达原文的思想。在翻译的过程中,不能无中生有地随意增词,而是增加原文中虽无其词而有其意的一些词。下面是一些从句法角度提供的例子。

#### 1. 增加答句中省略的词语

Do you like surfing on the Internet? Yes, I do.

你喜欢上网吗? 是的, 我喜欢上网。

Is it cold? Not very.

天气冷吗? 不太冷。

Are you tired? Not very.

你累了吗? 不太累。

Is table tennis your favorite sport? No, it isn't.

乒乓球是你最喜欢的运动吗? 不, 乒乓球不是我最喜欢的运动。

#### 2. 增加并列结构中省略的词语

They don't give up, never have and never will.

他们不放弃, 他们从没放弃过, 将来也不会。

Reading makes a full man; conference a ready man; writing an exact man.

读书使人充实, 讨论使人机智, 写作使人准确。

We don't accept it, we never have and never will.

我们不接受它, 我们从没接受过它, 将来也不会接受它。

A fool and his words are soon parted; a man of genius and his money.

愚人会很快忘记说过的话，智者会很快放弃手里的钱。

### 3. 增补表示逻辑关系或者平衡结构的词语

有些情况下英语原文中并没有表达逻辑关系的词语，但根据汉语的表达需要，译者应判断出其内在的逻辑关系，在翻译时加以补充。

You can't leave the country without a passport.

如果没有护照，就不能离开这个国家。

Since we've no money we can't buy a new car.

因为我们没钱，所以没法买新汽车。

Yes, I like Chinese food. Lots of people do these days, sort of the fashion.

不错，我喜欢中国菜。现在很多人喜欢中国菜，这种情况算是有点赶时髦吧！

Without a sense of your fault, how can repentance and amendment be expected?

如果对自己的错误都不能认识到，怎么能指望你会悔改呢？

从词性的角度来看，增加的词语可以分为以下几类：

#### 1. 增加动词

根据语境的特点，在翻译时经常需要在一些名词或动词的前后增加动词，才能让译文的意义明确完整、通顺自然，符合汉语的表达习惯。

He spoke hopefully of the success of the interview.

他满怀希望地说面试会取得成功。

After the badminton match, the president has another important match.

在观看羽毛球比赛之后，主席还有另一个重要比赛要观看。

There is a real difficulty.

现在真的困难发生了。

War is a disgrace to humanity.

战争使人类蒙受耻辱。

#### 2. 增加形容词或者副词

有些动词前后必须增加适当的形容词或副词，才能确切表达原文的意思。

Those people melted away.

那些人渐渐散开了。

As the bell rang, they began chatting, words poured out.

铃一响，他们就聊开了，滔滔不绝地讲个没完。

Theory is something, but practice is everything.

理论固然重要，实践尤其重要。

As he sat down and began talking, words poured out.

他一坐下来就讲开了，滔滔不绝地讲个没完。

#### 3. 增加名词

英语中有些不及物动词之后没有宾语，但宾语实际上是隐含在动词后面的，译成汉语时往往需要把它表达出来，如：

He never drinks before working.

他上班前从不喝酒。

Mary washed for a living after her husband died.

玛丽在丈夫去世后，靠洗衣维持生活。

This typewriter is indeed cheap and fine.

这部打字机真是价廉物美。

According to scientists, it takes nature 500 years to create an inch of topsoil.

根据科学家们的看法，自然界要用 500 年的时间才能形成一英寸厚的表面土壤。

## Section Three

### How to be a polite guest in a foreign family



1. **Respond to Invitations Promptly.** Being a gracious guest.1) If the invitation is telephoned and you aren't able to give the host an answer over the phone, say something like this:"What a lovely invitation! Thank you so much for thinking of us. I'll check with Tony and get back to you tomorrow."2) Give a respond for the invitation
2. **Keep the appointment**  
If you are agree to visit an American family, keep the appointment. It is considered particular rude to accept an invitation to a person's home for a meal and then not appear.
3. **Be punctual.**  
Most Americans will feel offended if you are more than ten or fifteen minutes late for a dinner party. If you're running late, phone ahead to the request that the host start without you.
4. **Bring a Gift**  
When you have been invited to a party, it's always nice gesture to take the host a small gift, even if the invitation instructs you not to. Bringing bottle of wine, a flowering plant, or candy is a considerate way to show your appreciation.
5. **Mind table manners**  
Americans use knives, forks, and spoons. They are taught to hold the fork in the left hand and the knife in the right hand while using the knife to cut their food, then to lay the knife aside and switch the fork to the right hand to eat. Europeans, by contrast, are taught to keep the knife in the right hand and the fork in the left at all times.
6. **Choose conversation topics**  
You need to talk the pleasant subjects during the meal, such as current event, Sports, congratulation, culture, good news. In addition to politics and religion, conversation topics to avoid include a woman's age and weight, people's income and the price they paid for things, and details about one's health, especially regarding bodily functions.
7. **Express appreciation to host and hostess when you're leaving**  
Following dinner, guests usually stay for two or three hours, but the thoughtful person is careful not to overstay his or her welcome. The host and hostess may urge a guest to stay longer in order to be polite, but most dinner parties break up at about 11 o'clock.  
  
As the guests leave, it is the custom to thank the hostess for a very pleasant evening. One may say anything that expresses appreciation. Common expressions are: "Good-bye. It was so nice of you to have me," or "Good-bye. It's been a thoroughly enjoyable evening," or "Thank you. I've had a very nice time." For larger favors than a dinner party, such as an overnight or weekend visit, it is customary to send a thank-you note.

---

## • Suggested Versions

### *Passage A*

### 与来自不同文化的人交朋友

众所周知,与来自不同文化的人交朋友非常重要。其重要性不仅体现在娱乐上,也体现在可以引导人们学习、获得情感支撑,促进成长。和来自不同文化背景的人交朋友能带来很多益处,甚至比罗列出来的还多。

与来自其他民族和文化背景的人交朋友,其主要好处是提升个人多元文化意识。多元文化意识是对种族、文化、宗教之间差异的兼收并蓄。结交有文化差异的朋友让你能够深入了解他们的语言、价值观和生活,知道他们的行为和信仰与你存在怎样的差异。因此,你学会接受差异并有了新的认识,没有哪种宗教或文化比其他优秀,只是每一种都有自己独特之处。

和来自其他文化的人交朋友对人格形成有非常积极的影响。你学会了在不同的场合应对自如,也有助于你的社交能力的提高。与其他文化背景的人交朋友时,你会不由自主地了解他们的习俗、语言和特定习惯等与自身的差异。不知不觉的,你体验的世界开始变得多样化,你也知道了其他信仰体系的存在。所有这些都会有效地引导你个性的发展与成长,而且你也能在生活中的不同场合应对自如。

此外,和来自不同文化的人交朋友可以增长知识。你可以了解他们的世界,环境,习俗和信仰以及更多。你不仅会获得知识,当参与他们的活动时,还会丰富你的阅历。如果你受邀参加一个外国朋友的婚礼,你能想象通过这件事你能增加多少知识和经验吗?在准备过程中,你可能会学习一些语言基础研究一下当地文化及不同习俗。只要你能想到的,就会拥有无限可能性。

和不同文化的人交朋友能扩大我们的视野,远离固化的思维模式。在我们成长过程中,我们学习自己的特定文化和习俗。只有当我们和他们交朋友时,才会更好了解他们的文化和特有习俗。他们的文化中可能会有一些我们不接受的成分,但我们应该学着以更宽广心胸去接受他们的文化。

总之,和不同文化、种族的人交朋友着实有益,因为这给我们带来的不仅仅是“陪伴和安慰”,还有更丰富的学习经历。这种影响不仅我们自己能够感受到,我们周围的人也能感受到。

## Passage B

### 鉴赏不同文化

世界是一个由不同语言、不同肤色和不同文化组成的多彩景观。培养对不同文化的鉴赏力非常重要。这样才能成为一个全面发展、能对他人的独特品质有较强鉴赏力的人。培养这种鉴赏力的方法之一就是去了解世界各地的其他文化。

有几种方法可以见识和熟悉不同的文化。一种方法是阅读来自特定文化作家写的书。通过阅读与特定文化有密切关系的作家作品,可以使人们真正一瞥该文化的饮食、音乐、语言、宗教、以及特定人群的生活方式。

例如,当一个老师希望他的学生面对不同的文化,他会经常阅读基于不同文化的民间传说故事。要了解美国原住民(印第安人)的各部落,他可以给学生阅读像雷夫·马丁著的《糙脸女孩》或道格拉斯·伍德和格雷格·库奇合著的《温迪戈的回归:北方森林》的书籍。他可以邀请美国本土的说书人参观课堂,使学生听到来自特定文化的正宗故事。

了解不同文化的另一种方式,是尝试学习一门外语。各种语言学习的书籍,软件和音频

节目都可以在公共图书馆或书店找到。一个人可以选择一门他一直想学习的语言，并制定相应的学习计划来帮助他掌握该门语言。

如果他雄心勃勃，可以参加外语学习班，以便在一个更加正式的环境中学习。与使用该语言的本地人接触，可以让他在努力学习语言的过程中，获取该文化的第一手知识。他可以去拜访该城市的其他地区，也可以与以使用该语言为母语的人建立互动关系，来慢慢地掌握这门语言。

如果他选择某特定文化群体的地道美食为研究样本，也可以从中了解不同的文化。他可以从那些来自不同国家、能烹饪地道特色的美食餐厅着手。如果某人想要了解更多关于欧洲、美洲、中东、非洲或世界任何其它文化，通过熟悉它们的食物，他就朝正确方向迈出的一大步。食物是不同文化的重要组成部分，人们通过食物，能够洞察某特定文化群体的生活方式。

与来自其他国家的人通过电子邮件或普通邮件往来，是熟悉不同的文化的另一个有效途径。喜欢会友的人如果无法亲自前往世界上那些遥远的地区，可以注册一个笔友。互联网使人们只需要通过登录到万维网，便能与来自不同国家的人相互联系。各个网站提供的笔友服务，使个人可与遍布全世界的笔友进行联络。

---

## ● Suggested Keys and Scripts

### **Get Started**

1. B 2. C

### **Reading for Meaning**

**Task 1** 1. D 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

**Task 2** 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

#### **Task 3**

1. **Culture**: Northern-European 北欧的, Indo-European 印欧的, Slavonic 斯拉夫的, Korean 韩国的, Latin-America 拉美的, black 黑人的, hybrid 混血儿, bilingual 双语的, cross-border 跨国的。

2. **Immigration**: passport 护照, visa 签证, embassy 大使馆, custom 海关, custom 风俗, American-born Chinese 香蕉人, overseas 在海外, emigration 移居。

3. **Adaptation**: habit 习惯, surroundings 环境, homesick 想家的, misery 苦恼, accustom 习惯于, lifestyle 生活方式, notion 观念, complaint 抱怨, regression 后退。

4. **Mentality**: narrow-minded 心胸狭窄的, broad-minded 宽宏大量的, frustration 受挫, goodwill 友好, discomfort 不安, rationality 理性, acceptance 接受, excitement 兴奋, depression 沮丧。

5. **Relationship**: follower 追随者, acquaintance 熟人, go-between 中间人, teammate 队友, fellow-apprentice 师兄弟, partner 搭档, bosom friend 密友, colleague 同事, date 约会对象。

## *Reading for Language*

### **Task 4**

1. diversify 2. distinction 3. specifically 4. personality 5. limitless  
6. acquiring 7. automatically 8. befriend 9. consciously 10. multicultural

### **Task 5**

1. an insight into 2. read up on 3. In conclusion 4. a wide range of 5. agree on

### **Task 6**

1. knew 2. would/should/could not have experienced 3. were to go/should go/went 4. Had  
5. (should) make 6. (should) be 7. (should) learn 8. were 9. removed/should remove 10. made

## *Reading for Comprehension*

### **Task 1**

1. read books 2. a foreign language 3. authentic food 4. interaction 5. The Internet

### **Task 2**

1. different cultures 2. glimpse 3. stories 4. Native speakers 5. Restaurants

## *Listening & Speaking*

### **Task 1**

1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B

### **Scripts**

1. W: I'm leaving for Chicago to study there. What's it like?  
M: Everything is fine except the terrible climate.  
Q: What can we learn from the conversation?
2. M: Will you go with us to New York? It's a wonderful place.  
W: I'd like to. But I'm afraid I couldn't adapt to American culture.  
Q: What's the woman worried about?
3. M: What do you think of our new Canadian manager?  
W: Oh, he is quite experienced. He knows both Chinese and Canadian cultures well.  
Q: What does the woman say about the manager?
4. M: Professor? How can we know American customs?  
W: One of the most effective ways is to travel there. You can see what happens when you take a field trip.  
Q: What's the woman's main point?
5. W: Do you know how to use chopsticks?  
M: Not really. I have tried. But knife and fork suit me better.  
Q: What do we learn from the conversation?

## Task 2

1. American 2 in a church 3. on the beach 4. Europe 5. two weeks

### Scripts

A: Hi, Linda. I have not seen you the whole week. Where have you been?

B: Oh, sorry. I forgot to tell you I had to go to America for my sister's wedding.

A: Congratulations!

B: Thanks.

A: Could you tell me where the wedding party was?

B: On the beach near the sea.

A: Really? The normal place for an American wedding is in a church, right?

B: Yeah. But there are still some American couples holding weddings in their own way.

A: I see! Wedding customs are also different in many areas.

B: Yes, they differ a lot.

A: Do the newlyweds take a honeymoon?

B: Sure. Europe will be their destination.

A: How long will their honeymoon be?

B: Probably two weeks or so.

A: May a pleasant honeymoon be with your sister!

B: Thanks.

## Task 3

Question 1. What are the beliefs and values of Americans?

Question 2. How many children does an average American family have?

Question 3. What is special US holiday?

Answer1. Be punctual, keep an appointment and so on.

Answer2. Weather, sports, trips, jobs, TV Programs etc.

Answer3. Students' creativity and practical ability.

### Scripts:

Question1: Do you know any American?

Question 2: What are the topics?

Question3: What does the American education focus on?

## Task 4

Enjoy your time

## English Song

### Fairytale of New York

(纽约童话)

It was Christmas Eve babe

In the drunk tank

An old man said to me, won't see another one  
And then he sang a song  
The Rare Old Mountain Dew  
I turned my face away  
And dreamed about you

Got on a lucky one  
Came in eighteen to one  
I've got a feeling  
This year's for me and you  
So happy Christmas  
I love you baby  
I can see a better time  
When all our dreams come true

They've got cars big as bars  
They've got rivers of gold  
But the wind goes right through you  
It's no place for the old  
When you first took my hand  
On a cold Christmas Eve  
You promised me  
Broadway was waiting for me

You were handsome  
You were pretty  
Queen of New York City  
When the band finished playing  
They howled out for more  
Sinatra was swinging,  
All the drunks they were singing  
We kissed on a corner  
Then danced through the night  
The boys of the NYPD choir  
Were singing "Galway Bay"  
And the bells were ringing out  
For Christmas day

You're a bum  
You're a punk  
You're an old slut on junk  
Lying there almost dead on a drip in that bed  
You scumbag, you maggot  
You cheap lousy faggot



Happy Christmas your arse  
I pray God it's our last

The boys of the NYPD choir  
Still singing "Galway Bay"  
And the bells are ringing out  
For Christmas day

### Task 6

1. 1) yet 2) before 3) on the contrary 4) First of all 5) In contrast  
2. 1) when 2) First 3) Next 4) Therefore 5) such as 6) or 7) Subsequently 8) but

### Task 7

1. D 2. E 3. A 4. F 5. B 6. C

### Task 8

1. Boarding Pass 2. International Passengers 3. Departure Lounge 4. Departure Time  
5. Arrival Time 6. 非吸烟席 7. 国籍 8. 前往目的地国 9. 官方填写 10. 签证种类

### Task 9

1. 我们每到美国一个城市就(逛)大街、(逛)商店、(游)公园、(看)演出、(下)馆子。  
2. 中英(两国)在政治、商务、教育、文化、国防和科技(方面)的联系进一步加强了。  
3. 我喜欢中国菜。现在很多人喜欢中国菜,(这)算是有点赶时髦(吧)。  
4. 直到昨天下午,霍布斯先生才跟他兄弟讨论了我的(各项)建议。  
5. 记者(纷纷)飞到墨西哥去体验当地文化。

### Task 10

1. 它教会你在不同的场合应对自如,并帮助你获得社交技能。  
2. 与来自不同文化背景的人交朋友能带来很多益处,甚至比罗列出来的还多。  
3. 多元文化意识是对种族、文化、宗教之间差异的兼收并蓄。  
4. 与来自其他国家的人通过电子邮件或普通邮件往来,是熟悉不同的文化的另一个有效途径。  
5. 世界是一个由不同语言、不同肤色和不同文化组成的多彩景观。培养对不同文化的鉴赏力非常重要。这样才能成为一个全面发展、能对他人的独特品质有较强鉴赏力的人。培养这种鉴赏力的方法之一就是去了解世界各地的其他文化。

## Workshop

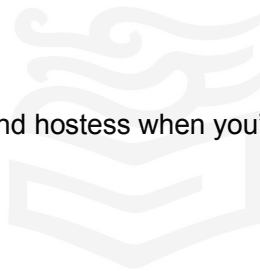
### Task 1

- Picture 1. **small gifts**  
Picture 2. **well-mannered**  
Picture 3. **hospitality**  
Picture 4. **musical show**



### Task 2

1. Respond to invitations promptly.
2. Keep the appointment.
3. To be punctual.
5. Mind table manners.
6. Choose conversation topics.
7. Express appreciation to host and hostess when you're leaving.



高等教育出版社